COMPLETE LIST OF PREPOSTIONS

PREPOSITIONS

- MORE THAN 60 COMMON PREPOSITIONS
- HUNDREDS OF EXERCISES TO SHARPEN FLUENCY

Jean Yates, Ph.D.

Table of Contents

Part Two: Prepositions by Function

Part Three: Using Prepositions

Part Four: Phrasal Verbs

*Two- or three-word combinations that function as prepositions

Introduction

Prepositions pose more problems for the non-native speaker or learner of English than any other part of speech. Why? Prepositions are just little words that never change in form; they are pronounced softly, in unstressed syllables; they aren't even given capital letters in book titles; native speakers choose the correct ones without thinking. How can they be confusing?

The word *preposition* has a straightforward definition: a word placed before a noun or pronoun to define its relationship with another word in the sentence. For the learner of English, however, prepositions are anything but straightforward.

- Prepositions are difficult, if not impossible, to define without using other prepositions.
  Example:
  In the sentence, "The book is on the table," what does on mean?
  On means "*above* and supported *by.*"

- In no other language are the prepositions (if they exist at all) the exact equivalents of English prepositions.
  Examples:

Spanish	***English***
Tíralo a la basura.	Throw it in the trash.
Vamos a la casa de tu hermano.	Let's go to your brother's house.
Está a la izquierda.	It's on the left.
La celebración empieza a medianoche.	The celebration starts at midnight.
Italian	***English***
Abita a Washington.	He lives in Washington.
Penso a te.	I'm thinking about/of you.
Lui e all'aeroporto.	He's at the airport.
German	***English***
Er wohnt auf der New Jersey Avenue.	He lives on New Jersey Avenue.
Er ist auf dem Flughafen.	He is at the airport.
Ich denke an dich.	I'm thinking about/of you.

Werfen Sie es an den Abfall.	Throw it in the trash.

- Many preposition words can also be adverbs or conjunctions.
  Examples:

the preposition down	She walked down the hill.
the adverb down	He put the book down.
the preposition after	She took a nap after lunch.
the conjunction after	She went outside after she put the book down.

- Many prepositions can indicate more than one meaning or relationship.
  Examples with after:

later than	We rested after lunch.
in pursuit of	The cat is after the mouse.
because of	He was angry after the way she acted.
in the style of continuously	This is a painting after Picasso. She worked night after night.

- Two or more prepositions can have the same meaning. Sometimes these prepositions are interchangeable.
  Examples:
  She is disappointed in her new job.
  She is disappointed with her new job.
  Sometimes they are not interchangeable.
  Examples:
  He is fascinated with his new job. (but not *in*)
  He is interested in his new job. (but not *with*)
  He is bored by his new job. (*by* or *with*, but not *in*)

- Many prepositions are also used in expressions where their meaning is entirely different from any of their predictable meanings. Expressions like this do not follow any pattern or logic, and do not allow for substitutions. They must be learned as vocabulary units.
  Examples:
  It's about time.
  They are never on time.
  She got here in time to see the whole show.

- A preposition in combination with another word may have multiple meanings.
  Example:

make up your bed	-arrange
make up your face	-paint
make up your mind	-decide
make up a story	-invent
make up a list	-write down
make up the difference	-equalize
make up last week's homework	-do overdue work
make up for lost time	-compensate
make up with your girlfriend	-reestablish a relationship

- Different prepositions can follow the same verb to change its meaning completely.
  Example:

break down	-collapse
break in	-enter by force
break off	-remove
break out	-erupt
break out of	-leave by force
break through	-establish a successful idea
break up	-end a relationship

- New preposition combinations continue to become part of the language.
  The following examples are relatively new:

boot up	-restart a computer
key in	-type text on the computer
log on	-connect to the Internet
act out	-misbehave (traditionally *act up*)
change out	-replace with
swap out	-replace with
scope out	-make a survey of
listen up	-pay attention

- Preposition words are sometimes "made into" other parts of speech.

Examples:

prepositions as nouns	I want to learn the ins and outs of prepositions.
prepositions as adjectives	The hospital has only a few in patients. There is a down sic to his idea.
prepositions as verbs	I heard they were upping the price.

- There are some regional differences in preposition usage among native speakers.

  Examples:

Most of the United States: *stand in line*	New York City: stand on line
Most of the United States: *graduate from high school/college/etc.*	Northeastern United States: *graduate high school/college/etc.*

As if all this weren't enough, English sentence patterns can also be troublesome, especially when prepositions are involved. The use of articles and pronouns and the formation of questions, adjective clauses, and noun clauses can be tricky.

Prepositions is designed to take the mystery out of prepositions for those whose first language is not English. It is a comprehensive handbook and guide that explains in detail the sixty-one commonly used English prepositions and their usage. It is easy to read and understand, and easy to use for quick reference or for more serious study.

Part One consists of a unit for each of the prepositions. Each unit includes all of the predictable definitions of the preposition, with typical grammar patterns, example sentences, and lists of the verbs and nouns that are most often used for each meaning. Idiomatic expressions and phrasal verbs are also defined and illustrated with examples. There are exercises at the end of each unit, and comprehensive exercises available online at online.barronsbooks.com.

Part Two provides charts and diagrams that illustrate and compare the functional usage of different prepositions. Each unit includes exercises and answers that will help the reader remember the guidelines.

Part Three gives formulas and examples that describe the use of prepositions before pronouns and verbs, in adjective and noun clauses, and in questions. Exercises at the end of each unit provide practice with these patterns.

Part Four is an exploration of phrasal verbs—idiomatic combinations that consist of a verb + a preposition—and of all the different ways these combinations can be used. Exercises follow each unit.

Part Five details cases where prepositions have merged with—and become prefixes to—certain nouns, adjectives, and verbs, giving them more specific meanings. In the appendices you will find answers to the exercises as well as a glossary for reference. This glossary is an alphabetical list of over 3,800 common adjectives, nouns, and verbs with the prepositions that normally precede and/or follow them, with the preposition name and section number of the text where the expression can be found, for further explanation of its meaning and use in a sentence.

To the Teacher

This book is designed to be used as a reference, rather than a textbook to be followed unit by unit. It is adaptable for use with students of every level of proficiency—from beginners to those who are quite advanced and are seeking perfection. You are encouraged to pick and choose the units that best fit your particular classes—and order them in a way that works with your own approach and teaching plan. Exercises are included in every part of the book, but you may wish to devise your own instead, or supplement these with types that you know work for your students. Emphasize to your students that proficiency is best achieved through practice of correct usage, both oral and written, and that repeating the exercises can help them internalize preposition usage so that they will feel confident in speaking and writing.

There are explicit instructions throughout that are meant to help students improve proficiency in using prepositions and to get over occasional plateaus, where they feel they are not progressing. When they begin to see the patterns—and follow those patterns—soon they will be using prepositions naturally and will confidently move on to greater proficiency.

To the Student

No matter what your level of English is, use this book to become more familiar with the patterns of English sentences. Train your ear to hear prepositions in conversations, and your eye to see them when you read. Ask yourself if you know the underlying meaning of each one. By all means, add new words you hear to the lists in the sections where they belong, and write down new expressions and phrasal verbs as you come across them. Mastering English prepositions is a challenge, but a valuable skill that will enhance your understanding and help you express yourself with confidence.

Following are some specific suggestions:

1. Read the introduction at the beginning of the book.

2. If you are a beginning student of English, begin with Part Two.
3. If you are more advanced, begin with Part One, Part Two, Part Three, or Part Four. You decide.
4. Do the exercises that follow each unit.
5. Write your answers on a separate sheet of paper, not in the book.
6. Check your answers with the Answer Key on p. 299.
7. If you have mistakes, write the correct answers down, and make sure you understand them. Repeat the exercises until you have no mistakes.
8. Repeat the exercises at different times in the future. This will help you memorize hundreds of expressions, correct usage, and perfect word order.

Barron's ESL Proficiency Series: Prepositions provides comprehensive exercises online for an optimal learning experience. Visit the Barron's Online Learning Hub:

online.barronsbooks.com

Register now and begin your language-learning journey with Barron's!

PART ONE

The Prepositions

How to Use Part One

1. Each preposition is described the following ways:

   - by its basic meaning

     This is usually a meaning that can be demonstrated and contrasted with the meanings of other prepositions.

   - by its inclusion in common expressions

     Many expressions include prepositions that do not carry their basic meaning. The preposition is invariable—it cannot be replaced with a different one. Each expression should be learned as a single unit.

   - by its use as a phrasal verb

     A phrasal verb is a combination of a verb and a preposition that changes the meaning of the verb. The preposition does not carry its basic meaning. This combination should be considered as a single verb unit that has a unique definition.

2. Each definition of a preposition is followed by one or more *patterns*, which indicate the word order appropriate for the definition.

   The verbs in each pattern can be changed to other tenses.

   Example:

   Pattern **verb + *toward* + noun**

   *The money **goes** toward helping the family.*

   This could also be:

   *The money **went** toward helping the family.*

   *The money **will go** toward helping the family.*

   *The money **is going to go** toward helping the family.*

   When a word cannot be substituted, that word is included in the pattern.

   Example:

   Pattern ***be* + *after* + noun**

   *The reception **is** after the wedding.*

be is the only possible verb for this pattern.

When a word is optional, it is in parentheses.

Example:

Pattern ***be* + *outside (of)* + noun**

The dog is outside the house.

*The dog is outside **of** the house.*

When the word *noun* is in the pattern, use the normal patterns for noun usage, as outlined in Part Three.

Example:

Pattern **verb + *against* + noun**

*Dr. Jones is against **the** idea.*

This could also be:

*Dr. Jones is against **my** idea.*

*Dr. Jones is against **this** idea.*

*Dr. Jones is against **our** ideas.*

*Dr. Jones is against **some of their** ideas.*

When the noun determiner cannot be substituted, it is included in the pattern.

Example:

Pattern **verb + *against* + *the* + noun**

*We sailed against **the** wind for an hour.*

(*the* cannot be replaced by *a, this, my,* or any other word)

When the word *one's* is in the pattern, it can be replaced by any possessive adjective (*my, your, his, her, its, our, their*)

Example:

Pattern ***to* + *one's* + noun**

*Someone will come to **your** aid.*

*Someone will come to **his** aid.*

*Someone will come to **our** aid.*

When no noun determiner is used, the symbol ø is in the pattern. The symbol ø means no normally acceptable or grammatically necessary word, such as *the*, is used in the expression, as in *to school* or *at home* or *in class*.

Example:

Pattern **verb + *against* + ø + noun**

I drive against traffic every morning.

The typical verbs, nouns, and adjectives listed with each pattern are the most common words that are used with the preposition. It is a good idea to think of the combinations as units. As an exercise, you may wish to write sentences with the suggested words, following the pattern and keeping the meaning of the combination in mind.

UNIT 1:
About

Basic Meaning

1. **About** identifies a **topic.**

Pattern 1 **noun + *be* + *about* + noun**

*This book is **about** prepositions.*

Nouns commonly used before *about*:

argument, article, book, conversation, disagreement, discussion, joke, lecture, movie, news, play, program, report, speech, story

Pattern 2 **noun + *about* + noun**

*She gave me advice **about** my loan.*

Nouns commonly used before *about*:

assurance, comment, complaint, gossip, lie, question, statement, truth

Pattern 3 **verb + *about* + noun**

*He often talks **about** his job.*

Verbs commonly used before *about*:

agree, argue, brag, care, complain, cry, do, dream, forget, groan, hear, joke, know, laugh, lie, moan, pray, read, say, scream, sing, talk, think, wonder, worry, yell

Related Expressions

to see about

- to delay a decision until more information is known

  *We want to buy a house, but we will **see about** that later.*

- to get information about

  *I called that office **to see about** getting a job there.*

to find out about to get information about

*She called the school **to find out about** her daughter's behavior.*

Pattern 4 **verb + noun + *about***

*She knows something **about** airplanes.*

Typical verbs used with this pattern:

ask, find out, know, learn, say

Typical nouns used before *about*:

a little, a lot, nothing, quite a bit, something, very little

Pattern 5 **verb + indirect object + *about* + noun**

*They asked me **about** my trip.*

Verbs commonly used with this pattern:

advise, ask, bother, contact, harass, inform, question, remind, teach, tell, write, warn

Pattern 6 **adjective + *about* + noun**

*They were very kind **about** our late arrival.*

Adjectives commonly used before *about*:

charming, kind, nasty, nice, mean, rude, sweet, understanding, unkind

2. About can identify the cause of an emotion or condition.

Pattern **adjective + *about* + noun**

*We are excited **about** our vacation.*

Adjectives commonly used before *about*:

angry, anxious, bashful, concerned, confused, crazy, excited, glad, happy, mad, nervous, objective, optimistic, pessimistic, right, sick, silly, unhappy, upset, worried

3. About can mean approximately.

Pattern ***about* + number**

*It is **about** nine o'clock.*

*We have **about** ten dollars each.*

4. About can mean in all parts of.

Pattern 1 ***be*** **+ noun +** ***about*** **+ noun**

There is a lot of excitement ***about*** *town.*

Pattern 2 **past participle of verb +** ***about*** **+ noun**

Papers were scattered ***about*** *the house.*

Typical past participles used before *about*:

scattered, sprinkled, strewn, thrown

5. About can describe a noun.

Pattern ***something/nothing*** **+ (adjective) +** ***about*** **+ noun**

There is something ***about*** *her that I like.*

There is something adorable ***about*** *her.*

There is nothing nice ***about*** *that.*

Adjectives commonly used before *about*:

adorable, attractive, bad, cute, exotic, fascinating, familiar, fishy, funny, good, interesting, nice, peculiar, special, strange, unusual, weird, wonderful

6. About can mean in all directions.

Pattern 1 **motion verb +** ***about*** **+ noun**

We wandered ***about*** *town for a few hours.*

Pattern 2 **motion verb +** ***about*** **(adverb)**

The baby crawls ***about*** *the house.*

Verbs commonly used with these patterns:

crawl, go, jump, look, move, poke, run, walk, wander

7. About (adverb) can mean almost.

Pattern ***be*** **+** ***about*** **+ adjective**

She is ***about*** *ready.*

Adjectives commonly used after *about*:

complete, done, finished, perfect, ready, right, through

Expressions

about + **infinitive** ready to

*The show is **about to begin**.*

to be about time an expression of annoyance that a person or thing has arrived late.

*"It's **about time** you got here," said the mother when her daughter came home late.*

to have an air about one to seem uncaring or unfriendly

*That new guy **has an air about him**.*

not about (adverb) + **infinitive** not willing to

*I'm **not about to sign** that agreement.*

*They're **not about to go** home early.*

about face

1. (verb) a military command to turn halfway around, and face the opposite direction

   *The sergeant ordered, "**About face**!"*

   *He told his men **to about face**.*

2. (noun) a complete change of opinion

   *He did **an about face** when he learned the facts.*

Phrasal Verbs

bring about (separable) cause

*The storm **brought about** problems.*

*The storm **brought** them **about**.*

come about (intransitive) happen

*How did that situation **come about**?*

to get about (intransitive) to be able to walk

*He is ninety years old, and he **gets about** very well.*

to find out about (nonseparable) to get information or news about something

*When did **you find out about** the accident?*

PRACTICE

1-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank.

1. This _____ is about dogs.
   airplane house story car
2. There was a _____ about my report.
   complaint traffic accident secretary police officer
3. He always _____ about his problems.
   drives runs jokes studies
4. We need to _____ about the law.
   try learn work study
5. They _____ us about the accident.
   learned finished told arrested
6. Her sister was _____ about my mistake.
   crazy unkind silly ridiculous
7. The students are _____ about the field trip.
   good bad silly excited
8. I have about _____ in my pocket.
   my lesson my keys twenty dollars nothing
9. We are about _____.
   learning the trip finished read
10. Her clothes were _____ about the bedroom.
   ironed scattered washed bought

1-2. Use an expression with *about* to express the following:

1. We are not willing to go there.
2. She changed her mind completely.

1-3. Use *about* in a phrasal verb to express the following:

1. The president's announcement <u>caused</u> riots in the street.
2. Is your great-grandmother able to walk by herself?

UNIT 2:
Above

Basic Meanings

1. **Above** can mean **in or at a higher place.**

Pattern 1 ***be* + *above* + noun**

*A dark cloud **was above** the house.*

Pattern 2 **verb + noun + *above* + noun**

*Let's hang the picture **above** the sofa.*

Verbs commonly used before *above*:

arrange, carry, hang, hold, keep, place, put, set

2. **Above** can mean **at a higher level, value, or rank.**

*Her blood pressure is **above** normal.*
*The children in her class are all **above** average.*
*In the navy, a captain is **above** a commander.*

3. **Above** indicates that a person is **too good** to commit the stated negative action.

Pattern 1 ***be* + *above* + noun**

*The policeman is **above** cruelty.*

Nouns often used after *above*:

cruelty, dishonesty, meanness, murder, perjury, theft, treason

Pattern 2 ***be* + *above* + verb in gerund form**

*He may be poor, but he is **above** stealing.*

Gerunds often used with this meaning:

breaking the law, cheating, gossiping, lying, robbing, snooping, stealing

As other parts of speech:

Above used as an adverb can indicate something **written earlier** in a book, article, or other document.

*Please see the instructions **above**.*

Above used as an adjective describes something written earlier.

*Please follow the **above** instructions.*

Expressions

up above (adverb) in heaven

*Our dear grandmother is now in peace **up above**.*

above and beyond the call of duty action that is more or greater than what is expected of a person

*My teacher's help after school was **above and beyond the call of duty**.*

aboveboard completely honest and open; legal

*Our negotiations with the company were **aboveboard**.*

above the law exempt from restrictions of the law

*People in power sometimes believe they are **above the law**.*

PRACTICE

2-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank.

1. A beautiful painting was above the _____.

house	car	tree	sofa

2. He wants to _____ the TV above the fireplace.

throw	hang	carry	drop

3. The _____ at our school is above the teacher.

principal	assistant teacher	student	bus driver

4. Our teacher is strict, but she is above _____.

winning	cruelty	having a party	honesty

5. You need to read the above _____.

book	newspaper	magazine	article

2-2. Use an expression with *above* to express the following:

1. The policeman’s help was extra special.
2. Even the president has to obey the law.

UNIT 3:
Across

Basic Meanings

1. Across indicates the direction of **movement from one side of an area to the other.**

Pattern **motion verb + *across* + noun**

*The girl ran **across** the yard.*

Verbs often used before *across*:

crawl, drive, go, limp, move, ride, run, swim, walk

2. Across can mean **on the other side of** a place.

Pattern **verb + *across* + noun**

*My friend lives **across** the street.*

3. Across from means **opposite or facing.**

Pattern 1 **verb + *across from* + noun**

*My assistant's office is **across from** mine.*

*My secretary sits **across from** me.*

Pattern 2 **verb + *across* + noun + from + noun**

*My assistant's office is **across** the hall from mine.*

4. Across and **all across** mean **in every area of.**

*People **across** the world are using the Internet.*

*There is a heat wave **all across** the country.*

Related Expression

across the board including everyone or everything

Everyone got a raise in salary: there was a wage increase of 3 percent ***across the board****.*

Phrasal Verbs

come across (nonseparable) find something unexpectedly

I ***came across*** *this old picture of you when I was looking for some documents.*

come across (intransitive) be received by an audience

The banquet speaker was not sure how well he ***came across****.*

run across (nonseparable) to find something unexpectedly

I ***ran across*** *a letter you wrote to me when we were children.*

get (something) **across to** (separable) make something understood

The young girl tried ***to get*** *it* ***across*** *to her boyfriend that she was not ready to get married.*

PRACTICE

3-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank.

1. Let's _____ across the lake.

   walk ride run swim

2. I can walk to the bank; it's just across the _____ from my house.

   town street country state

3. In our school building, the gym is across from the _____.

   library street bank bedroom

4. Wildfires are burning all across the _____.

   bank library state gym

3-2. Use an expression with *across* to express the following:

1. I found this recipe in my mother's cookbook.
2. Her brother tried to make her understand that she should be quiet.
3. I hope my message is clear to the audience.

UNIT 4:
After

Basic Meanings

1. After means **later than** or **following.**

Pattern 1 ***be*** **+** ***after*** **+ noun**

The reception is ***after*** *the wedding ceremony.*

Pattern 2 ***after*** **+ gerund form of verb + noun**

After *finishing your homework, you can watch television.*

Used as a conjunction with related meaning:

Pattern 1 ***after*** **+ subject noun + verb**

After *you finish your homework, you can watch television.*

Pattern 2 **subject + verb +** ***after*** **+ subject + verb**

The boss left ***after*** *I came in.*

2. After can mean **lower in value or rank.**

That school's athletes placed ***after*** *ours in the playoffs.*

3. After can mean **in pursuit of.**

Pattern **verb +** ***after*** **+ noun**

The cat ran ***after*** *the mouse.*

Verbs often used before *after*:

be, come, go, run

4. After can mean **because of.**

Pattern **adjective . . . +** ***after*** **+ noun**

*He was mad at her **after** her behavior at the party.*

Typical nouns used after *after*:

attitude, behavior, failure, kindness, manners, outburst, reaction, success

5. After can mean in spite of.

Pattern ***after* + verb in gerund form**

*They never got married, **after** dating for years.*

***After** reading this article three times, I still don't understand it.*

6. After can mean in the style of.

Pattern **noun + *after* + noun**

*The school play was a drama **after** Shakespeare.*

7. After can indicate continuously.

Pattern **time period + *after* + same time period**

*The man waited night **after** night for his telephone to ring.*

*Life got harder year **after** year.*

*His mother told him time **after** time to clean up his room.*

Nouns often used with this meaning:

day, hour, month, night, time, week, year

Expressions

after all

1. in spite of what happened; nevertheless

   *Our best player got hurt in the first quarter, but we played hard and won the game **after all.***

2. as a justification

   *Of course I am tired; **after all**, I have been working for twelve hours.*

after all is said and done; eventually

*I know you feel bad now, but you will be glad about this **after all is said and done**.*

after one's own heart especially appreciated

*Her mother always serves us chocolate cake; she is a woman **after my own heart**.*

Phrasal Verbs

come after (nonseparable) pursue

*When I saw him, I ran; but he **came after** me.*

look after (nonseparable) take care of something or somebody

*She **looks after** our baby on weekends.*

name after (separable) give a baby the name of someone special

*They **named** the baby **after** his grandfather.*

take after (nonseparable) be similar to an older relative

*The baby **takes after** his father.*

PRACTICE

4-1. Choose the best word for each blank.

1. I did my homework after I _____.

   read the instructions   went to sleep   graduated   finished college

2. My name is last on the list. My name is after _____.

   my teacher   your name   your sister   Mary

3. That dog always runs after ____.

   the school   the school bus   morning   meetings

4. After _____ Spanish in Mexico for six weeks, she still doesn't speak it.

   studies   studied   studying   was studying

5. She works day after _____ in order to pay her bills.

   year   month   hour   day

4-2. Use an expression with *after* to express the following:

1. This course is very difficult, but when we are finished, we will be happy.
2. Even though David didn't study for the test, he got a good grade.

4-3. Use *after* in a phrasal verb to express the following:

1. She looks a lot like her dad.
2. The baby’s name is Susan. Her grandmother’s name is Susan.
3. The babysitter takes care of the children on Thursday afternoons.

UNIT 5:
Against

Basic Meanings

1. Against means **touching** something or somebody for support.

Pattern 1 **verb + *against* + noun**

*The man was leaning **against** his car.*

Typical verbs used before *against*:

hang, lean, lie, rest, sleep

Pattern 2 **verb + noun + *against* + noun**

*They held the mirror **against** the wall.*

Typical verbs used before *against*:

butt, hold, keep, lay, lean, place, pull, put, rest, set

2. Against means **touching forcibly.**

Pattern **noun + verb + *against* + noun**

*The rain beat **against** the window.*

Verbs often used before *against*:

bang, beat, crash, crush, heave, hit, knock, push, splash, throw, thrust

3. Against means **in opposition to.**

Pattern **noun + verb + *against* + noun**

*The mayor was **against** the idea of a new day-care center.*
*Stealing is **against** the law.*
*Our senator voted **against** that bill.*

Typical verbs used before *against*:

act, argue, campaign, debate, fight, go, move, play, vote, work

Nouns often used after *against*:

action, bill, concept, enemy, force, idea, law, nomination, orders, plan, precepts, principles, proposal, regulations, religion, rules, suggestion, teachings, team, wishes

4. **Against** can mean **toward a force in the opposite direction.**

Pattern **verb + *against* + *the* + noun**

*Sailing was rough yesterday; we sailed **against** the wind all day.*

Typical verbs used before *against*:

drive, fight, go, move, run, sail, struggle, swim, walk

Nouns often used after *against*:

current, flow, force, tide, wind

5. **Against** can mean **to the disadvantage of.**

Pattern **noun + *be* + *against* + noun**

*You may not get that job because your age **is against** you.*

Typical nouns before *be against*:

age, background, height, inexperience, nationality, youth

6. **Against** can mean **in contrast to.**

*It is hard to see your black necklace **against** that dark dress.*

7. **Against** can mean **in defense of.**

Pattern **verb + noun + *against* + noun**

*They vaccinated the children **against** whooping cough.*

*Their heavy coats protect them **against** the cold.*

Typical verbs before *against*:

guard, lock up, protect, seal, vaccinate

8. **Against** can mean **in partial payment of.**

Pattern **noun + *against* + noun**

*Enclosed is a check for one hundred dollars **against** my bill.*

Typical nouns after *against*:

balance, bill, charges, debt, loan

Expressions

against all odds/with all odds against one having very little chance of success

*Team A was less experienced than Team B, but they won the game **against all odds**.*

*Many people come to this country and become successful with **all odds against them**.*

against traffic in the opposite direction of

*I drive **against traffic** because I live in the city and I work in the suburbs.*

go against the grain seem very wrong

*Cheating on your test really goes **against the grain**.*

have two strikes against one be at a strong disadvantage (In baseball, a player is eliminated after three strikes.)

*When you are poor and sick, **you have two strikes against you**.*

Phrasal Verbs

be up against (nonseparable) be faced with opposition, trouble, or hard work

*My friend **is up against** a lot of problems.*

*When he started his own business, he had no idea what he **was up against**.*

PRACTICE

5-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank.

1. The tired traveler was resting against his _____.

   wallet suitcase handkerchief money

2. It was hard, because we had to swim against the _____.

   current beach pool fish

3. She wasn't accepted on the team because she was too young; her _____ was against her.

sister	parents	age	teacher

4. The wind crashed against our _____.

teacher	feet	basement	windows

5. That dark bow doesn't show up against your _____.

dark hair	light hair	red lipstick	eyeshadow

6. We finally paid off $500 against our _____.

checks	loan	bank	lawyer

7. The children were vaccinated against _____.

smoking	drug abuse	the flu	homework

8. My representative in Congress voted against _____.

gun control	global warming	disease	weather

5-2. Use an expression with *against* to express the following:

1. It seems wrong that teacher salaries are so low.
2. They became prosperous, even though they began with nothing.
3. We are playing the state champions tomorrow night.

UNIT 6:
Ahead Of

Basic Meanings

1. Ahead of means closer to a destination than or in front of.

*My friend arrived first, and was **ahead of** me in line.*

2. Ahead of means before.

*You are in a hurry; please go **ahead of** me.*

3. Ahead of can mean more advanced than.

*Because he was absent for two weeks, the other students in his class are **ahead of** him.*

Phrasal Verbs

get ahead (intransitive) succeed

*She has struggled all her life to **get ahead**.*

get ahead of (nonseparable) advance faster or further than someone else

*They are rivals, always competing to **get ahead of** each other.*

go ahead (intransitive) do it; begin now

*I asked for permission, and they told me to **go ahead**.*

PRACTICE

6-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank.

1. He is ahead of me because I got here _____.

first before late early

2. The other students are ahead of me because I missed _____.
   my mother five classes five problems the baseball game

6-2. Use an expression with *ahead* to express the following:

1. We asked if we could look around, and they said yes.
2. They were just trying to earn a little more money.
3. His brother is trying to be better than he is at tennis.

UNIT 7:
Along

Basic Meanings

1. **Along** means **following the boundary** of something.

Pattern **verb + *along* + noun**

*We walked **along** the water's edge at the beach last night.*

Typical verbs before *along*:

jog, run, stroll, walk

2. **Along with** means **together.**

Pattern **verb + *along with* + noun**

*He used to sing **along with** me.*

Typical verbs used before *along with*:

hum, play, run, sing, walk, work

Expression

Used as an adverb:

all along the whole past time

*They have been enemies **all along**.*

Phrasal Verbs

get along (intransitive) live together in harmony

*She and her old roommate didn't **get along**.*

get along with (nonseparable) to live in harmony with someone

*I hope she **gets along with** her new roommate.*

PRACTICE

7-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank.

1. She walked along the _____ to be sure she didn't get lost.

   parking lot   shopping center   path   ocean

2. When you _____ along with me, it's easier.

   complain   work   worry   ask questions

7-2. Use an expression with *along* to express the following:

1. You thought we were angry, but we were just pretending the whole time.

7-3. Use a phrasal verb with *along* to express the following:

1. It's important to have a good relationship with your classmates.

UNIT 8
Among

Basic Meanings

1. Among can mean **surrounded by.**

Pattern **verb + *among* + plural (three or more) noun**

They camped in the woods ***among*** *the trees.*

2. Among can mean **with each other.**

Pattern **verb + *among* + plural (three or more) noun**

The children quarreled ***among*** *themselves.*

Typical verbs before *among*:

argue, celebrate, debate, discuss something, fight, play, share something, talk

3. Among can mean **to the individuals in a group.**

Pattern **verb + *among* + plural (three or more) noun**

They distributed the flyers ***among*** *the students.*

Typical verbs before *among*:

distribute, hand out, pass out

4. Among can mean **included in a group.**

Your friends are ***among*** *the survivors.*

5. Among can indicate **many of a group.**

Latin dancing is popular ***among*** *the college students.*

PRACTICE

8-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank.

1. We need to discuss this among _____.

   them themselves ourselves yourself

2. Her son is among the _____.

   school captain loser winners

3. It's pleasant to be in the meadow among the _____.

   mud rain flowers spring

Around

Basic Meanings

1. **Around** means **following a boundary, in a circular direction.**

Pattern **motion verb + *around* + noun**

We walked around the block.

Verbs commonly used before *around*:

drive, fly, race, ride, run, skip, travel, walk

Nouns commonly used after *around*:

block, building, house, room, track, world

2. **Around** indicates **movement in a circular direction in place.**

Pattern **verb + *around (on)***

*The earth spins **around on** its axis as it travels around the sun.*

Typical verbs used before *around*:

spin, turn, whirl

3. **Around** means **enclosing.**

Pattern **verb + noun + *around* + noun**

*The teacher drew a circle **around** each mistake.*

*The rancher put a rope **around** the cow's neck.*

Verbs commonly used with this pattern:

draw, fasten, put, tie, wrap

4. **(All) around** means **in all areas of.**

*There is crime **all around** this city.*

5. (All) around can mean **on all sides of.**

*People were screaming **all around** me.*

6. Around means **on another side of.**

*The bank is **around** the corner. Their farm is just **around** the bend.*

7. Around (adverb) means **approximately.**

Pattern ***around*** **+ number**

*We have **around** twenty dollars in our pockets.*

*I'll see you at **around** three o'clock.*

8. (All) around can mean **in many directions, randomly**

Pattern **motion verb +** ***around*** **+ noun**

*The new teacher looked **around** the room.*

Verbs often used before *around*:

drive, flit, go, jump, look, march, move, play, run, search, shop, snoop, walk, wander

9. Around can mean **do nothing.**

Pattern **verb +** ***around*** **+ place**

*Those teenagers just hang **around** the mall with nothing to do.*

Verbs used before *around*:

drag, fool, goof, hang, lie, lurk, mope, sit

Expressions

turn around (adverb) face the opposite direction

*You are going east; to go west, you have to **turn around**.*

turn something around (adverb) reverse the position of something

***Turn your chair around** and talk to me.*

around back at the back of a building

*Go **around back** to pick up your merchandise.*

go around the bend be crazy

*I am so busy, I think I am **going around the bend**.*

give someone the runaround avoid taking action by giving long explanations

*When I tried to return my broken air conditioner, the store manager **gave me the runaround**.*

Phrasal Verbs

get around (intransitive) often visit a lot of places and meet a lot of people

*He seems to know everybody; he really **gets around**.*

get around to (nonseparable) finally make the effort to do something

*One day I will **get around to** cleaning out my files.*

kick somebody **around** (separable) mistreat someone by controlling him or her

*He left that job because the boss always **kicked him around**.*

kick something **around** (separable) consider the pros and cons of an idea

*We are **kicking around** the idea of moving to Florida.*

kid around (intransitive) have fun

*Our babysitter is great because she likes to **kid around** with us.*

show someone **around** (separable) take someone on a tour of a place

*He **showed me around** the campus when I first arrived.*

hang around with someone (nonseparable) often be with someone

*She **hangs around with** a boy who lives up the street.*

run around with someone (nonseparable) often go out with someone

*She is **running around with** a new group of friends.*

PRACTICE

9-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank.

1. After dinner, the children like to go outside and run around the _____.

   mountain   road   horse   house

2. There is global warming all around the _____.

   world   mountain   street   river

3. You can’t see the school, but it is just around the _____.

road	corner	world	country

4. She wrapped a _____ around her neck.

scarf	hat	cushion	sweater

5. She has been _____ around the house all day.

laughing	pushing	moping	standing

6. The detective came in and _____ around the bedroom.

talked	sat	snooped	stopped

7. I have around _____ in my pocket.

twenty-five dollars	notes	wallet	maps

8. I’ll meet you at around _____.

the corner	my ankle	the house	five o’clock

9-2. Use an expression with *around* to express the following:

1. Drive to the back of the building.
2. You are going in the wrong direction.
3. He keeps asking her out, and she keeps saying she is too busy.

9-3. Use a phrasal verb with *around* to express the following:

1. She seems to know everybody.
2. Can you give me a tour of the campus?
3. We are just staying home and doing nothing.
4. His older brother bullies him.

UNIT 10:
As

Basic Meaning

1. **As** means **in the role of.**

Pattern 1 **verb + *as* + noun**

*She is a trained teacher, but she works **as** a secretary in our office.*

Typical verbs used before *as*:

act, serve, substitute, volunteer, work

Pattern 2 **verb + noun + *as* + noun**

*We have selected you **as** the captain of the team.*

Typical verbs:

choose, elect, nominate, pick, select, use

Expression

As for me regarding me

*They all went to the movies; **as for me**, I stayed home.*

PRACTICE

10-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank.

1. He is a student, but he _____ as a volunteer on weekends.

   studies works sleeps goes to the movie

2. They chose me to serve as the _____ of the team.

   brother action leader last

UNIT 11:
At

Basic Meanings

1. **At** can indicate **location**

Pattern 1 ***at*** **+** ***the*** **+ place within a city or town**

*The women are **at the** supermarket.*

Nouns commonly used with this pattern:

apartment, bus stop, factory, hospital, hotel, house, mall, office, park, parking lot, restaurant, station, store, theater, university

Pattern 2 ***at*** **+ an address**

*She lives **at** 3757 North 52nd Street, apartment 10.*

*You can contact him by e-mail **@**xyz.com.*

(The symbol @ is pronounced "*at*.")

Pattern 3 ***at*** **+** ***the*** **+ place within another place**

*He was waiting in the room **at the** door.*

*He likes to sit in her apartment **at the** window facing the park.*

Nouns commonly used with this pattern:

counter, desk, table, window

2. **At** indicates a **place of attendance.**

Pattern 1 ***be*** **+** ***at*** **+ ø place or meal of regular attendance**

*The children **are at** school.*

*We aren't allowed to watch television when we **are at** dinner.*

Nouns used with this pattern:

church, class, home, practice, school, work

breakfast, lunch, dinner

Pattern 2 ***be* + *at* + noun of event**

*They **are at** the movies.*

*She **is at** a meeting.*

Nouns commonly used with this pattern:

breakfast, brunch, celebration, concert, conference, dance, debate, dinner, forum, function, funeral, game, lecture, luncheon, meeting, movies, parade, party, play, program, reading, reunion, show, wedding

3. **At** can indicate **in the direction of; toward.**

Pattern 1 **verb + *at* + noun**

*The teacher smiled **at** the new girl.*

Verbs commonly used with this pattern:

aim, frown, glare, grab, grin, growl, hit, howl, laugh, leer, look, rush, shoot, shout, slap, smile, snatch, stare, swear, swing, wink, yell

Pattern 2 **verb + noun + *at* + noun**

*The small boy threw a rock **at** the window.*

Typical verbs:

swing, throw, toss

4. **At** is used to express **time.**

Pattern ***at* + specific time**

*We are leaving **at** four thirty.*

*They went home **at** midnight.*

*We always eat lunch **at** noon.*

Related Expressions

at first when something started

***At first** we thought this hike would be easy.*

at last finally

*After that long drive, we are home **at last**.*

at length for a long time, thoroughly

*We discussed that topic **at length** at our meeting.*

at night when it is night

*I always read or study **at night**.*

at once immediately (see also *number at a time*, below)

*We must pack up and leave **at once**.*

at present now

***At present** they are sleeping.*

at the beginning at first, when something started

***At the beginning** we tried to go too fast.*

at the end when something ended

***At the end** of the story, everybody was happy.*

at the moment at present, now

*I am very busy **at the moment**.*

(number) at a time ratio per instance or unit

*The tall boy liked to go up the steps two or three **at a time**.*

at once several things together

*Try to learn one step at a time, rather than three or four **at once**.*

5. **At** can mean **busy using** something; **working.**

Pattern 1 ***at*** **+** ***the*** **+ noun**

*I have been **at the** computer all day.*

Nouns often used after *at the*:

cash register, computer, fax machine, ironing board, sewing machine, stove, (steering) wheel

Pattern 2 ***be*** **+** ***at*** **+ work**

be **+** ***at*** **+** ***it***

*You must not bother him; he **is at work**.*

*He **has been at it** for four hours.*

6. **At** can indicate a **condition.**

Pattern ***be*** **+** ***at*** **+ ø noun**

*Those two countries **have been at** peace for ten years.*

Nouns used after *at*:

attention, ease, peace, rest, risk, war

7. **At** can indicate **reaction.**

Pattern 1 **adjective of state + *at* + noun**

*We were shocked **at** the condition of the classrooms.*

Typical adjectives used before *at*:

aghast, amazed, astonished, astounded, indignant, shocked, speechless, surprised, thrilled, upset

Pattern 2 **verb + *at* + noun**

*The crowd rejoiced **at** the good news.*

Verbs commonly used before *at*:

cheer, grumble, guess, hint, hoot, laugh, rebel, rejoice, snort, tremble

8. **At** indicates a **degree of skill.**

Pattern 1 **adjective + *at* + noun**

*Your son is good **at** tennis, but not very good **at** hockey.*

Pattern 2 **adjective + *at* + verb in gerund form**

*That couple is really great **at dancing** the tango.*

Typical adjectives used before *at*:

bad, excellent, good, great, lousy, skilled, terrible

9. **At** can indicate a **rate** or **level**

Pattern 1 ***at* + noun indicating price**

*At the market they are selling apples **at** sixty-nine cents a pound.*

*I wish we could buy mangoes **at** that price.*

*Her husband tries to buy everything **at** a discount.*

Pattern 2 **@* + number + *a* + noun indicating a unit of measurement**

*They are selling apples **@ 69¢ a lb**.*

Pattern 3 ***at* + noun indicating level of age or distance**

*You shouldn't work so hard **at** your age.*

*He was still singing **at** (the age of) eighty.*

We can't see very well ***at*** *this distance.*

The plane was flying ***at*** *three thousand feet.*

Related Expressions

at a distance from far away

I saw the new baby ***at a distance****, and he looked beautiful.*

at arm's length not close

I try to stay ***at arm's length*** *from him to avoid an argument.*

Pattern 4 ***at*** **+ noun indicating level of speed**

She shouldn't drive ***at*** *that speed.*

At *twenty-five miles an hour on the freeway, she should get a ticket.*

EXCEPTION: **When speed is expressed in numbers after a verb,** ***at*** **is omitted.**

That driver is going eighty miles an hour.

He drove sixty miles an hour the whole way home.

10. At can indicate the highest possible **degree** in value.

Pattern ***at*** **+ superlative adjective used as noun**

At *best she is an adequate typist.*

She works ***at*** *least nine hours every day.*

You should be here by five o'clock ***at*** *the latest.*

Superlatives commonly used with this pattern:

best, least, most, worst

the earliest, the latest

Expressions

at the sound, thought, or prospect of when one experiences

She gets nervous ***at the sound of*** *his voice.*

We shudder ***at the thought of*** *moving again.*

He is ***excited at the prospect of*** *going to South America.*

make a pass at indicate romantic interest toward

The young man ***made a pass at*** *the beautiful woman he met at the party.*

keep at it not stop working

*He wanted to go home, but he **kept at it** until the work was finished.*

be sick at heart be sad

*We **were sick at heart** when the dog died.*

be an old hand at be very experienced with

*Our professor **is an old hand at** government operations.*

be at an advantage be in a better-than-average position

*He **is at an advantage** because his family has influence.*

be at a disadvantage be in a less-than-average position

*When you are a newcomer at work, you **are at a disadvantage**.*

down at the heels shabby

*His brother looked **down at the heels** when he was without work.*

at one's mercy in someone else's power

*I was **at the intruder's mercy** because he had a gun in my back.*

at one's discretion someone's own decision

*We can go home when we are ready, **at our own discretion**.*

at that

1. at that point, not any more or further

   *You did a good job; leave it **at that**.*

2. illogically

   *We got lost, and in our hometown **at that**!*

be getting at meaning, but not saying

*The manager didn't exactly say his employer had been dishonest, but we all knew what he **was getting at**.*

Phrasal Verb

pick at something (nonseparable) agitate with one's fingernails

*The child **picked at** the scab on his knee.*

PRACTICE

11-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank.

1. Stella isn't here now. She's at _____.

   the school   school   store   movies

2. He lives at _____.

Oak Street, 123	123 Oak Street	Street Oak, 123	Oak Street, #123

3. The old man _____ at the nurse.

smiled	walked	talked	threw

4. She has been at the _____ all day.

bed	chair	computer	lamp

5. The two countries are fighting. They are at _____.

war	enemies	jungle	battlefield

6. Don't be late. Be here by six o'clock, at the _____.

earliest	soonest	latest	tomorrow

7. Please don't drive at _____.

speed	75 miles per hour	so fast	highway

8. They are selling bananas at _____.

on sale	grocery store	40 cents per pound	supermarket

9. The airplane was flying at _____.

wind	clouds	low	3,000 feet

10. We were upset at _____.

the news	the newspaper	newspaper	news

11-2. Use an expression with *at* to express the following:

1. They are working now.
2. Don't try to do everything together.
3. We finally arrived.
4. When we first arrived, we were happy.
5. He has a better chance than the others.
6. I stay away from her.
7. He keeps talking, but I don't know what he means.
8. He showed romantic interest in me.

11-3. Use a phrasal verb with *at* to express the following:

1. The child scratched the scab on his knee, trying to take it off.

*@ is pronounced *at*. This meaning and the one for an email address (section 11.1) are the only acceptable uses of this symbol.

UNIT 12:
Back To/Back From

Basic Meanings

1. Back to indicates return.

Pattern 1 **verb + *back* to + noun of place or time**

*Please go **back to** the beginning of your story.*

*The children went **back to** the museum to see the new exhibit.*

Verbs often used before *back to*:

crawl, drive, fly, go, hark, jump, look, move, race, run, think, walk

Pattern 2 **verb + noun + *back to* + noun**

*We took the train **back to** the city.*

Typical verbs:

bring, carry, drive, pull, push, take

2. Back from indicates return to a starting place from a different place.

Pattern **verb + *back from* + noun of place**

*I'll be **back (home) from** the store in about ten minutes.*

*We can't leave until your mother gets **back from** her trip.*

Typical verbs before *back from*:

be, come, drive, fly, get, move, run, walk

3. Back indicates a return of something.

Pattern 1 **verb + noun + *back* (+ *to* + noun)**

*Please give this plate **back to** your mother.*

*I took the dress **back to** the store because it didn't fit.*

Typical verbs:

bring, give, pay, send, take

Pattern 2 **verb + noun + *back* (+ *from* + noun)**

*Please get my suit **back from** the cleaners.*

Pattern 3 **verb + noun + *back* (adverb)**

*I called you **back** when I got home.*

Typical verbs:

call, bring, pay, put, take

Phrasal Verbs

get back (intransitive) move out of the way

*We wanted to see the action, but they made us **get back**.*

get back at someone (nonseparable) do harm in return for a wrong

*After he was fired, he tried to **get back at** his boss.*

get back to someone (nonseparable) call someone with new information

*As soon as I know the figures, I will **get back to** you.*

get someone **back** (separable) do harm in return for a wrong

*He hurt my feelings, but I **got** him **back** by hanging up the phone.*

cut back (intransitive) spend less

*With a lower salary he had to **cut back**.*

cut back on (nonseparable) spend less on something

*With a lower salary he had to **cut back on** entertainment.*

PRACTICE

12-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank.

1. We took the coffee maker back to _____ because it didn’t work.

   the store store shop shops

2. Our neighbors _____ back from their trip.

   went came took fly

3. I didn’t hear the telephone. Please _____ me back.

   throw hit speak call

12-2. Use a phrasal verb with *back* to express the following:

1. She stepped in front of the crowd, but the officer told her to move out of the way.
2. She took my wallet, and I wanted revenge.
3. I will call you when I have the information.
4. We need to spend less money on movies.

UNIT 13:
Before

Basic Meanings

1. Before means **earlier than.**

We must leave ***before*** *four o'clock.*

2. Before can mean **in a more important position than.**

She is so ambitious that she puts her job ***before*** *her family.*

3. Before can mean **facing.**

The handsome singer had many adoring fans ***before*** *him.*

4. Before can mean **in the future.**

The bride smiled as she thought of the happiness ***before*** *her.*

5. Before can mean **in the presence of.**

I was told to appear ***before*** *the judge.*

PRACTICE

13-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank.

1. The speaker had _____ before him.

   a lot of people   a lot of money   a lot of time   a lot of cars

2. It takes an hour to get there. We have to arrive at five P.M., so we need to leave here before _____.

six P.M. four P.M. eight P.M. midnight

3. When you go to traffic court, I hope you don't have to appear before _____.
the trial the desk the classroom the judge

UNIT 14:
Behind

Basic Meanings

1. **Behind** means **in the rear of.**

*The trash can is **behind** the chair.*
*My friend sits **behind** me in class.*

2. **Behind** can mean **less advanced than.**

*Miss Thompson's class is studying lesson three; the other classes are studying lesson four. Miss Thompson's class is **behind** the other classes.*

3. **Behind** can mean **left in the past.**

*He is rich now; all his financial problems are **behind** him.*

4. **Behind** can mean **late.**

behind schedule later than usual

*The train is **behind schedule**.*

behind in payments late in making a regular payment

*She is always **behind in** her rent payments.*

5. **Behind** can mean **encouraging or supporting.**

Pattern **noun + *behind* + noun**

*The successful man had an ambitious woman **behind** him.*
*Those candidates have a lot of money **behind** them.*
*There must be a greedy person **behind** this scheme.*

Typical nouns after *behind*:

a person or people

idea, plan, plot, project, scheme

Expressions

behind the scenes not seen

*The lawyer knew all the facts about the case; he had a lot of help **behind the scenes**.*

behind the times old-fashioned/old-school

*Her dad still uses a typewriter; he is really **behind the times**.*

PRACTICE

14-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank.

1. Maria sits in Row 6. Estéban sits in Row 7. I sit in Row 8. Estéban sits behind _____.

   me Maria the teacher him

2. Miss Evans's class is reading chapter eight. Mrs. Martínez's class is reading chapter ten. Our class is reading chapter seven. Our class is behind _____.

   Mrs. Martínez's class the school Mrs. Martínez's and Miss Evans's classes Miss Evans's class

3. Who is behind this ridiculous _____?

   train idea house car

4. He is happy now. His _____ are behind him.

   problems cars plans ideas

14-2. Use an expression with *behind* to express the following:

1. The bus is later than usual.
2. You are very old-fashioned.

UNIT 15:
Below

Basic Meanings

1. **Below** means **lower in number or degree than.**

*Your body temperature is 97 degrees Fahrenheit; it is **below** normal, which is 98.6.*

2. **Below** can mean **lower in rank or level than.**

*In our company the supervisors are **below** the directors.*

*Our offices are on the fourth floor; theirs are **below** ours, on the third floor.*

Expression

below the belt unfairly, not according to the rules

*He pretended to be her friend, then applied for her job. That was really **below the belt**.*

PRACTICE

15-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank.

1. If your body temperature is 93 degrees Fahrenheit, it is below _____.

   the belt　　par　　normal　　the roof

2. My bedroom is on the third floor. My sister's bedroom is on the second floor. Her bedroom is below _____.

   mine　　herself　　our parents'　　the roof

15-2. Use an expression with *below* to express the following:

1. It was unfair that my friend told my secret to everyone.

UNIT 16:
Beneath

Basic Meanings

1. Beneath means under and concealed by.

*My glasses were **beneath** the newspaper.*
*The daffodils sprouted **beneath** the snow.*

2. Beneath can mean less worthy than.

*Now that she is rich and famous, she thinks her family is **beneath** her.*

3. Beneath can mean unlikely, because of goodness or pride.

Pattern 1 ***it*** **+** ***be*** **+** ***beneath*** **+ noun of person + infinitive**

*She was a little wild, but **it was beneath** her to commit a crime.*

Typical verbs after *beneath*:

break the law, commit a crime, commit adultery, commit perjury, gossip, lie, murder, steal

Pattern 2 **noun/gerund form of verb +** ***be*** **+** ***beneath*** **+ person**

*She was a little wild, but committing a crime **was beneath** her.*

Typical nouns before *be beneath*:

adultery, breaking the law, committing a crime, forgery, lying, murder, stealing

PRACTICE

16-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank.

1. He is famous, but arrogant; he thinks _____ are beneath him.

the class | everybody | other people | his brother

2. I finally found my phone. It was beneath my _____.

pillow | library | classroom | wall

3. I don't like him, but I think _____ is beneath him.

walking to school | cheating | taking a test | working

UNIT 17:
Beside

Basic Meaning

1. **Beside** means **next to.**

Pattern **verb +** ***beside*** **+ noun**

Please come over here and sit ***beside*** *me.*

Verbs commonly used with this pattern:

be, kneel, lie (down), rest, sit (down), sleep, stand, stay, walk, work

Expressions

beside the point irrelevant

He always wastes time at our meetings by talking about things that are ***beside the point****.*

beside oneself extremely agitated

My mother is ***beside herself*** *because she doesn't know where my brother is.*

PRACTICE

17-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank.

1. My best friend likes to _____ beside me at school.

   fight   go to school   talk   sit

2. He is dizzy; please _____ beside him.

   run   sing   walk   work

17-2. Use an expression with "beside" to express the following:

1. Her comment was <u>on a different topic</u>.

2. The teacher is <u>very upset</u>.

UNIT 18:
Besides

Basic Meaning

1. **Besides** means **excepting.**

*Everyone **besides** me is at the beach.*

PRACTICE

18-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank.

1. _____ besides Cecelia are at school.

   The girl　　The girls　　All the girls　　The boy

2. Besides _____, I invited all my friends to the party.

   my brothers　　my games　　my toys　　my house

UNIT 19:
Between

Basic Meanings

1. Between indicates **separation of two things.**

Pattern **noun + *between* + noun**

My neighbor and I built a fence ***between*** *our backyards.*

2. Between can show **connection of two places.**

Route 395 goes ***between*** *New York and Washington, D.C.*

3. Between can indicate **a choice of.**

Pattern **verb + *between* + noun + *and* + noun**

You can have only one dessert, so please decide ***between*** *cake and ice cream.*

Verbs often used before *between*:

choose, decide, judge, pick, select

4. Between means **not lower or higher in number.**

We have saved ***between*** *three and four thousand dollars.*

It is hot today. It must be ***between*** *80 and 85 degrees.*

5. Between means **from a time to another time.**

She will be away all weekend, so don't call her ***between*** *Friday night and Monday morning.*

6. **Between** can mean **shared by.**

We are on a diet, so we will have one piece of cake ***between*** *us.*
They only had five dollars ***between*** *them.*

7. **Between** can mean **together.**

The newlyweds painted their new house ***between*** *them.*

As an adverb:

In between means **at a middle point**

He isn't old or young; he is ***in between****.*

Expression

between you and me confidentially

I don't like to spread gossip, but ***between you and me****, they got married last week.*

PRACTICE

19-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank.

1. Is there is a _____ between your house and theirs?

car	fence	dog	lamp

2. Ali has three dollars. I have two dollars. We have _____ dollars between us.

four	six	ten	five

3. She is on vacation this week. She won't be at the office between ______.

Thursday and Sunday	Tuesday and Saturday	Monday and Friday	Saturday and Sunday

4. It's very cold today. The temperature is between _____ degrees.

33 and 40	50 and 60	55 and 75	80 and 90

5. That route goes from east to west. It goes between _____.

New York and Florida	New York and California	Washington and Boston	New York and Boston

6. I like all the desserts. I can’t _____ between ice cream and pie.
   save want love decide

19-2. Use an expression with *between* to express the following:

1. This is a secret, but I am not voting for that politician.

UNIT 20:
Beyond

Basic Meanings

1. **Beyond** means **on the other side of.**

*Our street is **beyond** the traffic light.*
*If you are traveling west, New Mexico is **beyond** Texas.*

2. **Beyond** means **past the limits of.**

Pattern 1 ***be*** **+** ***beyond*** **+ noun**

*The sick child **was beyond** help.*
*That situation **is beyond** my understanding.*

Pattern 2 ***be*** **+ adjective +** ***beyond*** **+ noun**

*The palace **was** beautiful **beyond** description.*

Nouns commonly used after *beyond*:

belief, comprehension, help, one's wildest dreams, salvation, saving, understanding

3. **Beyond** can mean **later than.**

Pattern ***beyond*** **+ noun**

*The guests were having so much fun that they stayed well **beyond** midnight.*
*In this town nothing is open **beyond** ten o'clock.*

Expressions

beyond one not understandable by someone

*This puzzle is **beyond me**.*

*That technical article was **beyond him**.*

beyond the pale totally unacceptable

*His rude jokes at that formal reception were **beyond the pale**.*

the great beyond (adverb) heaven

*She said there would be perfect peace in **the great beyond**.*

PRACTICE

20-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank.

1. If you are traveling east from San Francisco, Philadelphia is beyond _____.

   Chicago New York Washington Miami

2. I don’t understand this _____. It is beyond me.

   homework library classroom teacher

20-2. Use an expression with *beyond* to express the following:

1. His behavior was totally unacceptable.

UNIT 21:
But

Basic Meaning

1. **But** means **except.**

*She works every day **but** Friday.*

PRACTICE

21-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank.

1. They work six days a week. They work every day but _____.

Saturday and Sunday	Monday and Tuesday	Thursday and Saturday	Monday

UNIT 22:
By

Basic Meanings

1. **By** indicates an **actor, instrument, or cause**

Pattern ***be*** **+ past participle +** ***by*** **+ noun**

The work ***was*** *done* ***by*** *a carpenter.*
The mark ***was*** *made* ***by*** *a hammer.*
The damage ***was*** *caused* ***by*** *the storm.*

2. **By** means **following the boundary of something; along**

They walked ***by*** *the side of the road.*

3. **By** indicates a **method** or **way.**

Pattern **verb + (noun) +** ***by*** **+ noun**

She ***made*** *a little money* ***by*** *begging.*
We ***sent*** *the letter* ***by*** *mail.*
They ***went*** *to the mountains* ***by*** *Route 66.*

4. **By** can mean **according to** a form, period of time, packaging, weight, number, or amount

Pattern **verb + (noun) +** ***by*** **+** ***the*** **+ noun**

He makes his decisions ***by the*** *rules.*
She charges ***by the*** *hour.*
We buy eggs ***by the*** *dozen.*

Typical nouns after *by the*:

day, hour, month, week

job, piece

bag, barrel, box, bucket, bushel, cup, drop, gallon, ounce, pint, pound, quart, ream, tablespoonful, teaspoonful

5. By can mean **not later than.**

*You must be here **by** 6 A.M. sharp.*
*I'm worried; they should have arrived **by** now.*

6. By means **near** or **next to.**

*His desk is **by** mine.*
*I hope you will stay **by** me.*

7. By indicates **multiplication, division,** and **square measurement.**

*We multiplied four **by** three. (4 . 3 = 12)*
*They divided ten **by** two. (10 ÷ 2 = 5)*
*That room measures ten feet **by** twelve feet. It measures 120 square feet.*

8. By can mean **a lot of.**

Pattern ***by*** **+** ***the*** **+ noun**

*He gets letters **by the** hundreds every day.*

Typical nouns used after *by the*:

dozens, hundreds, thousands, truckload

9. By can indicate **the extent of a win or a loss.**

*That horse won **by** a nose.*
*They lost the basketball game **by** three points.*

Expressions

by the time when

By the time *you get up, I'll be in New York.*

by a mile by a lot; to a great extent

*We won the game **by a mile**.*

by far without question

*He is **by far** the strongest man here.*

by all means certainly

*You should **by all means** visit the art gallery.*

(all) by oneself alone; without help

*The children are at home **by themselves**.*

*The girl made the cake **all by herself**.*

by day during the day; **by night** during the night

*Most people work **by day** and sleep **by night**.*

by chance for no apparent reason

*I saw my teacher at the mall **by chance**.*

by (any) chance perhaps

*Do you **by any chance** have change for a dollar?*

by the way incidentally

***By the way** , my aunt is coming to visit next week. Why don't you come see her?*

little by little (adverb) slowly

*He practiced every day, and **little by little**, began to show improvement.*

one by one one at a time; **two by two** two at a time

***One by one** , she picked up the pearls from her broken necklace.*

*The schoolchildren walked to the museum, **two by two**, holding hands.*

by profession indicates one's job

*He is a teacher **by profession**.*

by nature/by disposition naturally

*She is generous **by nature**.*

*He is nervous **by disposition**.*

by reputation indicates common belief

*She is a good lawyer **by reputation**.*

go by the board be ignored

*Our suggestions for improving the company **went by the board**.*

by and by (adverb) one day, in the future

*We'll meet again, **by and by**.*

by and large (adverb) almost completely

*The company is doing well, **by and large**.*

Phrasal Verbs

do well by (nonseparable) be responsible for someone's benefit

*She was a good mother; she **did well by** her children.*

stand by (intransitive) wait in hopes of success

*I didn't have a reservation, but I decided **to stand by**, and got on the flight.*

stand by (nonseparable) to support

*She **stood by** me when I was in trouble.*

swear by (nonseparable) have complete faith in the worth of something

*My mother **swears by** that cleaning product.*

drop by (intransitive) visit without notice

*Your friends **dropped by** this afternoon, but you weren't here.*

drop by (separable) to deliver

*A boy **dropped** this package **by** today.*

get by (intransitive) live, but with difficulty

*He's feeble, but he **gets by**.*

go by (nonseparable) pass in front of

*We **went by** your house last night.*

put by (separable) store

*She **put** her dreams **by** for a while.*

run by (separable) to tell in detail

*She **ran** her story **by** me several times this afternoon.*

PRACTICE

22-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank.

1. Our new cabinet was built by an expert _____.

   policeman   father   carpenter   tailor

2. The children must be home before dinner. They must be here by _____.

   5 P.M.   noon   midnight   10 P.M.

3. Gasoline for a car is sold by the _____.

cup	pint	quart	gallon

4. The apartment measures 30 feet by 60 feet. It measures _____ square feet.

600	1,600	1,800	2,000

5. We earn extra money by _____.

studying	babysitting	eating	exercising

6. There are a lot of _____ by the side of the creek.

sand	rocks	mud	water

7. We won the game by _____.

three miles	a hundred	10 points	close

22-2. Use an expression with *by* to express the following:

1. You should certainly ask for help if you need it.
2. Her nature is to be kind.
3. Incidentally, don't forget the meeting next week.
4. Some people work at night, and sleep in the daytime.
5. Nobody was with her.
6. I found this old photo when I wasn't looking for it.
7. Do you know my father, perhaps?

22-3. Use a phrasal verb with *by* to express the following:

1. He supported me when I needed help.
2. Could you tell me that story again?
3. She lives, with difficulty.
4. Can we visit you this afternoon?
5. I pass your house on my way home from work.

UNIT 23:
Close To

Basic Meanings

1. Close to means **near.**

*Your house is **close to** the metro station.*
*They are sitting **close to** each other.*

2. Close to indicates **a very friendly** or **intimate relationship.**

*She is very **close to** her older sister.*

3. Close to can mean **almost.**

*I wrote **close to** fifty invitations this morning.*

PRACTICE

23-1. Choose the word or words that best fill each blank.

1. Our teacher lives one block from our school. She lives close to _____.
   the bank downtown us work
2. They are twins. They are very close to _____.
   school work each other him
3. The exam was from 1 P.M. until 3:45 P.M. It lasted close to _____.
   two hours three hours an hour five hours

UNIT 24:

Despite/In Spite Of

Basic Meanings

1. Despite indicates **an illogical occurrence.**

*We had a good time **despite** the bad weather.*

2. In spite of has the same meaning and usage as *despite*.

*We had a good time **in spite of** the bad weather.*

PRACTICE

24-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank.

1. He did a good job despite his _____.

   lack of experience   expertise   good education   good manners

2. We arrived on time in spite of the _____.

   street   traffic   parking lot   help

UNIT 25:
Down

Basic Meanings

1. Down indicates movement from a higher place.

Pattern **noun + verb + *down* + noun**

*The rocks rolled **down** the mountain.*

Typical verbs used before *down*:

come, fall, go, move, roll, run, slide, walk

2. Down means following the way of; along

Pattern 1 **noun + verb + *down* + noun**

*The old man went **down** the road on foot.*

Typical verbs used before *down*:

come, drive, go, move, run, skate, walk

Pattern 2 **noun + verb + noun + *down* + noun**

*The boys rode their bikes **down** the street this morning.*

Typical verbs before *down*:

bring, carry, drive, move, pull, push, ride, take

Typical nouns after *down*:

freeway, highway, path, road, sidewalk, street, turnpike

3. Down indicates destruction.

Pattern 1 **noun + verb + *down* + noun**

*The intruder broke **down** the door.*

Typical verbs used before *down*:

blow, break, bring, burn, cut, strike, take, tear

Pattern 2 verb + noun + *down*

*The intruder broke the door **down**.*

Expression

upside down turned so that the bottom is on top

*The cups go in the dishwasher **upside down**.*

Phrasal Verbs

back down (intransitive) retreat

*The dog **backed down** when I called his name.*

calm down (separable) soothe; tranquilize

*We had to **calm** the children **down** after the excitement.*

close down (separable) stop business activity, temporarily or permanently

*We **close** the shop **down** at four o'clock every day.*

*They plan to **close** that business **down** for good.*

come down with (nonseparable) become sick

*She missed the picnic because she **came down with** the flu.*

crack down on (nonseparable) impose restrictions

*The police are **cracking down on** street violence.*

let down (separable) disappoint

*She **let** me **down** when she didn't help me with my party.*

look down on (nonseparable) feel superior to

*The older students tend to **look down on** the younger ones.*

mark down (separable) lower in price

*I bought this shirt after they **marked** it **down** to ten dollars.*

put down (separable) insult

*She shouldn't go out with him; he **puts** her **down** all the time.*

run down (separable) criticize negatively

*She always **runs** her hometown **down**.*

shut down (separable) turn off a computer; end a business

*She worked all night and didn't **shut** her computer **down** until morning.*

*They **shut** that shop **down** two years ago.*

turn down (separable) reject

He got a job offer today but he is going to ***turn*** *it* ***down****.*

write down (separable) put on paper for future reference

She didn't know my phone number, so I ***wrote*** *it* ***down*** *for her.*

PRACTICE

25-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank.

1. The children like to _____ down the hill on their sleds.

run	walk	slide	crawl

2. They cut the _____ down with a saw.

tree	house	school	grass

3. He took the trash down to the _____ for collection.

highway	movies	street	party

25-2. Use an expression with *down* to express the following:

1. He hung the picture in the wrong direction.

25-3. Use a phrasal verb with *down* to express the following:

1. The government is imposing restrictions on homelessness.
2. I hope you don't get a cold.
3. Julia's mother will soothe her.
4. Please command your dog to retreat.
5. Please don't disappoint your teacher.
6. Are you going to reject the offer?
7. Let's buy the computer when the price is lower.
8. She feels superior to the newcomers.
9. It's a good idea to make a note of your passwords.
10. Stop criticizing me in front of your friends.

UNIT 26:
During

Basic Meanings

1. **During** indicates **within a period of time.**

*We slept **during** the day.*
*They practiced basketball **during** the summer.*

2. **During** means **at the same time as another event.**

*I slept **during** the football game.*
*They lived in the north **during** the war.*

PRACTICE

26-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank.

1. She needs to _____ during the day because she works at night.
   work   sleep   go to parties   smoke
2. What are you going to do during the _____?
   office   field   football game   soccer goal

UNIT 27:
Except

Basic Meaning

1. **Except** means **excluding.**

*Everyone went to the movies **except** me.*
*We work every day **except** Sunday.*

PRACTICE

27-1. Choose the best word or words for blank.

1. My brothers are called Abe, Brian, Carlos, and David. I saw Brian, David, and Carlos last night. I saw all of my brothers except _____.

   David   Carlos   Brian   Abe

2. We go to school on weekdays. We go to school every day except _____.

   Saturdays and Sundays   Mondays and Fridays   Tuesdays and Wednesdays   Tuesdays and Thursdays

UNIT 28:
Far From

Basic Meanings

1. Far (away) from indicates **a great distance between places or people.**

*Their office isn't **far (away) from** here.*
*His sister moved **far from** home a long time ago.*

Before an adjective:

2. Far from can mean **not.**

Pattern ***far from*** **+ adjective**

*His wife is **far from** perfect.*

Adjectives often used with this pattern:

ideal, perfect, wonderful

PRACTICE

28-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank.

1. We live two blocks from school. Our school isn't far from _____.
   our friends   our house   our mother   your house

2. He has lied to us many times. He is far from _____.
   handsome   honest   trickery   illegal

UNIT 29:
For

Basic Meanings

1. **For** indicates a **recipient** or **beneficiary.**

Pattern 1 **noun + *for* + noun**

*I have a present **for** you.*

Nouns often used before *for*:

answer, cure, gift, idea, job, letter, message, plan, present, project, question, secret, suggestion, surprise

Pattern 2 **noun + *for* + ø noun**

*We have news **for** you.*

Typical nouns before *for*:

advice, help, information, news, nothing, something

Pattern 3 **verb + noun + *for* + noun**

*She sang a song **for** me.*

*He only wants the best **for** you.*

Verbs often used before *for*:

bake, build, buy, care, cook, create, dance, design, do, get, make, perform, play, sing, want, win, work, write

2. **For** indicates **a special purpose.**

Pattern 1 **noun + *for* + noun**

*You need a coat **for** winter.*

*He has a bicycle **for** transportation.*

Pattern 2 **noun + *for* + verb in gerund form**

*They have a special place **for** washing cars.*

*The doctor has a machine **for** measuring blood pressure.*

Related Expression

room for/space for enough space to hold an event or accommodate a number of people or things

*We need **room for** twenty people for our party.*

*We don't have **room for** a grand piano.*

3. For can indicate the **intended result** of an action.

Pattern 1 verb + *for* + noun

*The boys were screaming **for** help.*

*What are you looking **for**?*

Verbs often used before *for*:

apply, ask, audition, beg, call, campaign, compete, cry, fight, go, go out, hope, long, look, petition, plead, pray, register, run, scream, send, shop, shout, stand in line, strive, study, train, try out, wait, whistle, wish, work, yell

Related Expression

run for office be a candidate in an election

Pattern 2 verb + someone + *for* + noun

*We nominated him **for** president of the club.*

Typical verbs:

ask, need, nominate, send, train, want

Pattern 3 noun + *for* + noun

*I hope they are developing a cure **for** the flu.*

*Do you have a good recipe **for** lemon pie?*

Nouns often used before *for*:

cure, directions, idea, instructions, lesson, need, pattern, plan, program, project, recipe, system

Pattern 4 *be* + adjective of condition + *for* + noun

*I **am** hungry **for** steak and french fries.*

*They **are** ready **for** the ball game.*

Adjectives often used before *for*:

anxious, eager, greedy, hungry, impatient, prepared, ready, starved, thirsty

4. **For** can explain the **reason** of an action or fact.

Pattern 1 **verb + *for* + noun**

He apologized ***for*** *his absence.*

Pattern 2 **verb + *for* + gerund form of verb**

He apologized ***for*** *arriving late.*

Pattern 3 **verb + someone + *for* + noun**

They rewarded her ***for*** *bravery.*

They congratulated him ***for*** *graduating.*

Verbs often used before *for*:

book, chide, cite, compensate, congratulate, criticize, expel, fine, get, honor, pay, praise, punish, reimburse, reprimand, reward, scold, tease

Pattern 4 ***be* + adjective + *for* + noun**

She ***is*** *famous* ***for*** *her great parties.*

She ***is*** *famous* ***for*** *giving great parties.*

Adjectives often used before *for*:

famous, feared, known, notorious, popular, loved, well known

5. **For** can indicate the **expected benefit** of an action.

Pattern **verb + *for* + noun**

We play soccer ***for*** *fun.*

Typical nouns after *for*:

exercise, fun, happiness, kicks, money, peace, pleasure, practice, relaxation, security

6. **For** can indicate the **effect** of an adjective.

Pattern 1 ***be* + adjective + *for* + noun**

Calcium ***is*** *good* ***for*** *your bones and teeth.*

Adjectives often used before *for*:

accessible, available, bad, crucial, good, healthy, helpful, important, necessary, unhealthy, useful

Pattern 2 ***It*** **+** ***be*** **+ adjective +** ***for*** **+ object + infinitive**

*It was hard **for** him to make good grades.*

Adjectives often used before *for*:

bad, better, challenging, customary, crucial, good, helpful, important, impossible, necessary, possible, ridiculous, unimportant, unnecessary, unusual, useful, useless, usual, wasteful, worse

Pattern 3 ***be*** **+ (not) adjective +** ***enough*** **+** ***for*** **+ noun**

*This apartment **is** good **enough for** me.*

Pattern 4 ***be*** **+** ***too*** **+ adjective +** ***for*** **+ noun**

*That course **was too** hard **for** him.*

*This apartment **is too** small **for** three people.*

7. For can indicate the **recipient** of someone's feelings.

Pattern ***be*** **+ adjective +** ***for*** **+ noun (person)**

*We **are** happy **for** her on her wedding day.*

*Why **are** you sorry **for** yourself?*

Typical adjectives before *for*:

delighted, happy, pleased, sorry, thrilled

8. For can indicate activity or preparation on an **occasion.**

Pattern **verb + (noun) +** ***for*** **+ noun**

*What do you want **for** your birthday?*

*What did you have **for** dinner?*

Typical nouns after *for*:

one's anniversary, birthday, graduation breakfast, dinner, the holidays, lunch

9. For indicates **a substitute.**

Pattern 1 **noun +** ***for*** **+ noun**

*We had to use a newspaper **for** an umbrella.*

*I'm sorry, I mistook you **for** someone else.*

Pattern 2 **verb +** ***for*** **+ noun**

*He taught the class **for** our teacher, who was sick.*

Verbs often used with this meaning:

act, conduct, direct, drive, fill in, manage, operate, run, speak, stand in, substitute, teach, work

10. For can mean available.

Pattern **noun + *for* + noun**

*The house is **for** sale.*

*The pianos are **for** use by the students.*

Nouns often used after *for*:

hire, practice, purchase, rent, sale, use

Related Expression

up for grabs available to many people

*The chairmanship is **up for grabs**.*

11. For can indicate a destination.

Pattern **verb + *for* + noun**

*We are leaving **for** Spain in two weeks.*

Verbs used before *for*:

head, leave, plan, set out, start out, take off

12. For can indicate representation.

*Red is **for** stop; yellow is **for** caution; green is **for** go.*

*M is **for** Mary.*

13. For can indicate equality in an exchange.

Pattern 1 ***be* + noun + *for* + noun**

*The bananas **are** two pounds **for** a dollar.*

Pattern 2 **verb + noun + *for* + noun**

*We bought three books **for** twenty-five dollars.*

Typical verbs:

buy, do, exchange, hand over, make, rent, sell, take, trade, want

Pattern 3 **verb + *for* + noun**

*He works **for** twenty dollars an hour.*

Related Expressions

for free without charge

for nothing without charge

14. For can indicate amount.

Pattern **noun + *for* + noun**

*The mechanic sent them a bill **for** three hundred dollars.*

Nouns often used before *for*:

bill, check, invoice, receipt, request

15. For can indicate length of time.

*He was here **for** ten years.*

Related Expressions

for good forever

*He came to live in this country **for good**.*

for life until death

*They sent him to prison **for life**.*

16. For can indicate need on a future date.

*She needs the musicians **for** Thursday afternoon.*

17. For can mean despite.

Pattern ***for* + *all* + possessive pronoun + noun**

***For all** her experience, she's not a very good secretary.*

Nouns often used with this meaning:

education, experience, expertise, knowledge, popularity, qualifications, training

18. **For** indicates the **person or people responsible for an action.**

Pattern ***for*** **+ person + infinitive**

Your final grade is ***for*** *the teacher to decide.*

That problem is ***for*** *you to solve.*

19. **For** can describe a **sense** or **talent.**

Pattern ***have*** **+ noun +** ***for*** **+ noun**

He has an ear ***for*** *music.*

She has a touch ***for*** *the piano.*

Nouns often used before *for*:

aptitude, ear, eye, knack, rhythm, talent, touch, voice

Related Expressions

have a nose for gossip often hear and spread news about others

have an eye for the girls often admire pretty women

20. **For** can indicate an **unusual fact or exception.**

Pattern 1 **adjective +** ***for*** **+ noun**

That boy is tall ***for*** *his age.*

It's warm ***for*** *February.*

Pattern 2 **adverb +** ***for*** **+ noun**

She plays very well ***for*** *a beginner.*

21. **For** can indicate **purpose** or **outcome**

Pattern **verb +** ***for*** **+ noun**

We are ***for*** *higher wages.*

You have to stand up ***for*** *your rights.*

Verbs often used before *for*:

be, push, stand, stand up, fight, strike, work hard

22. For can mean because of.

*We are thankful **for** your help.*
*She is grateful **for** her family.*

23. For can mean favor or support.

*I'm cheering **for** my school's team.*

Verbs often used before *for*:

be, cheer, show respect

Related Expression

to have a preference for to prefer
*She **has a preference for** the other job.*

As a conjunction

For means **because.**
*She went home early, **for** she was sick.*

Expressions

for once for the first time, showing exasperation
*Would you please be at work on time **for once**!*

once and for all immediately and forever after
*She decided to stop smoking **once and for all**.*

word for word reading or talking slowly, one word at a time
*He read the letter to me **word for word**.*

for the time being meanwhile; until something happens to change the situation
*We can't do anything now, so **for the time being** we will act as usual.*

for fear of in order to avoid
*He worked and saved **for fear of** being poor again.*

for a change as usual, sarcastically
*It's raining **for a change**.*

be for the best even though the situation is unpleasant, it may be good

*I was sad when she died, but it **was for the best**, because she was suffering a lot.*

go for a drive/run/swim/walk spend a short time doing that activity

*We always **go for a walk** after lunch.*

see for oneself investigate personally

*I couldn't believe her, so I decided to **see for myself**.*

for better or for worse accepting all conditions, regardless of what happens in the future

*He promised to stay with her forever, **for better or for worse**.*

for naught with no result

*Our efforts were all **for naught**; we lost.*

Phrasal Verbs

go (in) for (nonseparable) like a lot

*The college girls really **go for** Latin dancing.*

go out for (nonseparable) perform in hopes of being selected to play on a team

*She **went out for** the softball team, but didn't make it.*

care for (nonseparable) love

*She really **cares for** him.*

care for (nonseparable) want

*She doesn't **care for** more ice cream, thank you.*

fall for (nonseparable) innocently believe or trust

*He **falls for** all of her tricks.*

not stand for (nonseparable) not allow

*The teacher **won't stand for** talking during a test.*

stand for (nonseparable) tolerate

*His mother doesn't **stand for** laziness.*

stand up for (nonseparable) support publicly

*His best **friend stood up for** him through all his problems.*

take for (separable) consider as

*Don't **take him** for a fool; he is really quite smart.*

try out for audition or perform in hopes of being selected to play a part in a show, band, orchestra, play, or team

*He's going to **try out for** the school play.*

PRACTICE

29-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank.

1. I know it's your birthday, and I have a _____ for you.
   heartache surprise headache love
2. They practice yoga for _____.
   necessary painful relaxation boring
3. We stood in line two hours for _____.
   fun tickets speed good luck
4. We congratulated him for _____.
   winning losing lying sleeping
5. It's cold there. You will need _____ for winter.
   a bathing suit a warm coat shorts a straw hat
6. She failed the test; it was too _____ for her.
   difficult simple easy slow
7. *A* is for ant. *B* is for bee. *C* is for _____.
   bear cat deer elephant
8. Anybody can be the Treasurer. The office is up for _____.
   sale rent grabs five dollars
9. I'm _____ for Mexico in two weeks.
   staying flying driving leaving
10. She sent me a _____ for $29.
    bill paper letter cash
11. You don't have to pay for these pencils. You can have them for _____.
    ten cents free ten dollars a dime

12. I’m so _____ for you for your promotion.

jealous	happy	unhappy	sorry

13. He _____ the car for me when I got tired.

drove	argued	saved	waited

14. We don’t plan on going back. We came here for _____.

class	good	war	problem

15. She’s taking piano lessons because she has a good ear for _____.

art	violin	music	opera

16. She is 86, and still beautiful. She looks _____ for her age.

wrinkled	tired	short	good

17. For all her experience in the movies, she’s not a great _____.

actress	waitress	teacher	nurse

18. The workers are striking for _____.

fun	vacation	higher wages	boss

29-2. Use an expression with *for* to express the following:

1. You never help me! Please help me now!
2. We didn’t trust the travel guidebook, so we investigated personally.
3. You’re on time—as usual (sarcastically).
4. He decided to stop calling her, period.
5. It was very hot, so I decided to swim for ten or fifteen minutes.
6. We cannot change the situation now; we will stay quiet until things change.

29-3. Use a phrasal verb with *for* to express the following:

1. They supported the mayor when he was accused of misconduct.
2. He loves him mom dearly.
3. She is hoping to be in the play, and has an audition next week.
4. The university does not allow cheating.
5. No, thank you. I don’t want any dessert.

UNIT 30:
From

Basic Meanings

1. **From** indicates a **source.**

Pattern 1 **verb + *from* + noun**

*Tony is **from** Alabama.*
*I hear **from** him every week.*

Verbs commonly used before *from*:

be, call, come, derive, hear

Pattern 2 **verb + noun + *from* + noun**

*We get help **from** our neighbors.*

Verbs commonly used with this pattern:

borrow, bring, buy, collect, copy, get, mail, obtain, receive, send

2. **From** indicates a **point of departure.**

Pattern **verb + *from* + noun (place)**

*The ship sailed **from** San Francisco.*
*Please start **from** the beginning.*

Typical verbs:

begin, depart, drive, fly, go, graduate, move, read, sail, start (over), take off

3. **From** can indicate **separation.**

Pattern 1 **verb + *away* + *from* + noun**

*We ran **away from** the building.*
*Keep **away from** the crowd.*

Typical verbs before *away from*:

drive, get, keep, move, run, walk

Pattern 2 **verb + noun + *from* + noun**

*We collected the papers **from** the students.*

Verbs commonly used with this pattern:

borrow, buy, chase, collect, delete, dissociate, eliminate, erase, expel, hide, keep (away), protect, release, remove, save, scare (away), separate, shield, steal, subtract, take (away)

4. **From** can indicate **difference.**

Pattern 1 **number + *from* + number**

*Three **from** nine equals six.*

Pattern 2 **number + noun of time or distance + *from***

*He lives five miles **from** here.*

*They are only twenty minutes (away) **from** the city.*

*I will see you two weeks **from** today.*

Related Expressions

be different from not be alike

*My sweater **is different from** yours.*

differ from

*My opinion **differs from** his.*

distinguish from identify in a comparison

*I can't **distinguish** her **from** her twin sister.*

tell from identify in a comparison

*I can't **tell** her **from** her twin sister.*

know from identify in a comparison

*I don't **know** her **from** her twin sister.*

not know someone from Adam never have met someone

*I'm meeting his brother at the airport, but I don't **know** him **from Adam**.*

5. From . . . to can indicate the lowest and highest limits of an estimate; **between.**

Pattern ***from*** **+ number +** ***to*** **+ number**

You will earn ***from*** *ten* ***to*** *fifteen dollars an hour.*
We expect ***from*** *twenty-five* ***to*** *thirty people.*

6. From . . . to can give the **starting and ending time or place.**

We work ***from*** *9 A.M.* ***to*** *5 P.M.*

Related Expressions

from beginning to end
from front to back
from May to September
from one place to another
from one side to the other
from start to finish
from top to bottom

7. From can indicate the **material** something is composed of.

Pattern ***be*** **+ past participle of verb +** ***from*** **+ noun**

This suit ***was*** *made* ***from*** *three different fabrics.*
A new plant ***has been*** *developed* ***from*** *those seeds.*

Past participles commonly used before *from*:

crafted, created, derived, developed, fashioned, made, put together, sewn

8. From can indicate a **position** for viewing or hearing.

I can see the bridge ***from*** *my window.*
Let's try to see the problem ***from*** *his point of view.*
Can you hear the actors ***from*** *the back of the auditorium?*

Related Expressions

from here, there

from his/her/my/our/their/your point of view

from this/that angle, distance, position, vantage point

9. From can indicate a cause.

Pattern 1 **adjective + *from* + gerund form of verb**

*They are exhausted **from** working so hard.*

Adjectives often used with this pattern:

better, bored, drunk, exhausted, fat, healthy, sick, sore, tired, well, worse

Pattern 2 **verb + noun + *from* + noun**

*They knew the songs **from** memory.*

*He learned his lesson **from** hard work.*

Typical nouns after *from*:

hard work, listening, memory, studying

Related Expression

to suffer from to hurt because of

*She **suffers from** neglect.*

10. From can indicate avoidance.

Pattern 1 **verb + *from* + noun**

*Try to keep **from** shaking.*

*We can't hide **from** them any longer.*

Pattern 2 **verb + direct object + *from* + verb in gerund form**

*Try to keep him **from** shaking.*

*They hope to stop her **from** running away.*

Typical verbs:

keep, prevent, stop

11. From can mean because of.

Pattern ***from* + noun**

__From__ the way he walks, I think his ankle is sprained.
__From__ his accent, I believe he is from Boston.

PRACTICE

30-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank.

1. She has a devoted son. She _____ from him every day.
   calls texts hears loves

2. I finally _____ his name from my account.
   stole subtracted borrowed deleted

3. Where did you _____ from?
   study graduate go to college finish

4. The plane _____ from New York.
   landed sailed took off separated

5. We will be working from _____.
   9 A.M. to 5 P.M. 5 A.M. to 4 A.M. 3 A.M. to 2 A.M. 9 P.M. to 8 P.M.

6. She hopes to earn from _____ a year.
   $70,000 to $60,000 $60,000 to $70,000 $100,000 to $30,000 $90,000 to $85,0(

7. He refuses to _____ the problem from my point of view.
   see know read talk

8. We are _____ from working so hard.
   sane tired happy unhappy

9. She's so sad. I'm trying to keep her from _____.
   laughing crying telling jokes swimming

10. They are identical twins. I can't _____ one from the other.
    see talk say tell

UNIT 31:
In

Basic Meanings

1. In indicates **location inside** or **within** something else.

Pattern 1 **verb + *in* + noun**

*We live **in** that house.*
*The pencils are **in** the box.*

Nouns commonly used after *in*:

Geographical areas:

city, continent, country, state, town

*He lives **in** Seattle, Washington, in the United States.*

Comfortable, protected places:

alcove, cocoon, large chair, nest

*He sat down **in** the chair and read his novel.*

Inside areas:

attic, balcony, basement, building, corner, hall, kitchen, office, room

*She is **in** her office, **in** that building, **in** room 302, **in** the corner.*

Vehicles where the passengers cannot walk around:

canoe, car, helicopter, small airplane, small boat

*We went **in** the car, but they went **in** a helicopter.*

Publications and speeches:

article, book, dictionary, encyclopedia, lecture, magazine, newspaper, speech

*He didn't say that **in** his speech, but I read it **in** the newspaper.*

Pattern 2 ***be* + *in* + ø noun**

*He can't come to the phone because he's **in** bed.*

Nouns commonly used after *in:*

bed, church, class, jail, place, school, town

Pattern 3 **verb + noun +** ***in*** **+ noun**

Put the pencils ***in*** *the box.*

Typical verbs:

drop, get, insert, lay, place, push, put

Typical nouns:

bag, box, drawer, file, folder, notebook, sack, suitcase, trunk, wallet

2. In indicates **membership** of a group or category.

Pattern ***be*** **+ noun +** ***in*** **+ noun**

There ***are*** *seven people* ***in*** *our family.*

Your brother ***is*** *the expert* ***in*** *that office.*

Nouns commonly used after *in*:

association, category, choir, chorus, club, family, fraternity, group, office, society, sorority

3. In can indicate a **period of time.**

Pattern ***be*** **+** ***in*** **+ time period**

century

in + the *She was born* ***in the*** *1800s.*

decade

in + the *He lived* ***in*** *Arkansas in* ***the*** *1950s.*

Life was quieter ***in the*** *fifties.*

month

in + ø *He took his vacation* ***in*** *March.*

period of the day

in + the *I work* ***in the*** *morning.*

My boss works ***in the*** *afternoon.*

We relax ***in the*** *evening.*

period of time in general

in + the *We lived there* ***in the*** *past, and we will live here* ***in the*** *future*

stage of life **adulthood, childhood, death, health, life, sickness**

in + ø	***In*** *childhood she was always* ***in*** *good health.*
season	**spring, summer, fall, winter**
in +/- (ø)	*They always go to Europe* ***in*** *(the) summer.*
year	
in + ø	*Their son was born* ***in*** *1994.*
during general activities	**actions, deeds, dreams, prayers, thoughts**
in + one's	*She is always* ***in our*** *thoughts.*

4. In can mean **after** a period of **time.**

Pattern ***in*** **+ (number) + noun**

She will be here ***in*** *five minutes.*

Related Expression

in no time very soon

He will be here ***in no time****.*

5. In can mean **movement** or **transfer** from one place into another.

Pattern 1 **verb +** ***in(to)*** **+ noun**

They went ***in*** *the store.*

Verbs often used with this meaning:

burst, butt, come, get, go, jump, move, run, walk

Pattern 2 **verb + noun +** ***in*** **+ noun**

Please pour the juice ***in*** *the glass.*

Typical verbs:

draw, drop, fly, lay, place, pour, pull, push, put, ram, shove, squeeze, throw

Pattern 3 **verb + object +** ***in***

When you finish your test, hand it ***in*** *(to the teacher).*

Typical verbs:

bring, hand, pass, take, turn

6. In indicates the **number of individual parts** of something.

Pattern **number + plural noun + *in* + noun**

There are seven days ***in*** *a week.*

There are one hundred cents ***in*** *a dollar.*

7. **In** means during a type of **weather.**

Pattern 1 ***in*** **+ *the* + noun**

They walked all day ***in the*** *rain.*

Nouns used with this pattern:

cold, fog, heat, humidity, rain, snow, storm, sun

Pattern 2 ***in*** **+ ø + noun**

In *hot weather we stay inside.*

Nouns used with this pattern:

bad weather, cold weather, foggy weather, good weather, hot weather, rainy weather, sunshine

8. **In** can indicate separated **parts** of something.

Pattern **verb + noun + *in(to)* + plural noun**

She cut the cake ***in*** *twelve pieces.*

Verbs commonly used with this pattern:

cut, divide, separate, sever, split

Nouns commonly used after *in*:

halves, parts, pieces, portions, sections

Related Expression

in two in halves

We only had one candy bar, so we cut it ***in two*** *and shared it.*

9. **In** can indicate **direction.**

The girls came ***in*** *this direction, and the boys went* ***in*** *the opposite direction.*

As an adjective

in-bound moving toward the city or town

There was a lot of ***in-bound*** *traffic this morning.*

10. In can indicate ratio.

Pattern **number + *in* + number**

He is one ***in*** *a million.*

Four ***in*** *ten are employed full-time.*

11. In indicates the style or composition of recorded material.

Pattern ***in*** **+ noun**

The letter was written ***in*** *ink.*

They printed the photographs ***in*** *duplicate.*

Nouns commonly used after *in*:

black and white, bold, capital letters, color, duplicate, ink, italics, lower case, oil, pencil, print, water colors

12. In indicates the use of a language or style of expression.

Pattern ***in*** **+ ø noun**

The paper was written ***in*** *English.*

The girls chorus sang ***in*** *harmony.*

Nouns often used after *in*:

a few words, chorus, code, concert, detail, full, harmony, music, poetry, rhythm, sync, tune, verse

13. In indicates current style.

Pattern ***in*** **+ ø noun**

Her clothes are always ***in*** *fashion.*

She likes to be ***in*** *style.*

Nouns used with this pattern:

fashion, season, style, vogue

Related Expression

to be in to be in fashion

*Platform shoes **are in** again this season.*

14. In indicates a condition.

Pattern 1 ***be*** **+** ***in*** **+** ***a*** **+ noun**

*She **is** always **in a** good mood.*

Nouns commonly used with this pattern:

good/bad mood, hurry, mess, rage, stew

Pattern 2 **verb +** ***in*** **+ ø noun**

*We are **in** good health.*

*She ran into the room **in** tears.*

Nouns often used with this pattern:

anguish, awe, chaos, comfort, condition, confusion, danger, despair, dire straits, disarray, disaster, disgrace, disorder, doubt, dread, fear, good/bad health, love, need, pain, ruins, shape, sickness, tears, trouble

15. In describes a manner of behavior.

Pattern 1 **verb +** ***in*** **+** ***a*** **+ noun**

*He spoke **in a** loud voice.*

Nouns often used with this pattern:

manner, voice, way

Pattern 2 **verb + noun +** ***in*** **+ ø noun**

*He told me that story **in** confidence.*

Nouns often used after *in*:

cold blood, confidence, fairness, friendship, fun, person, silence, someone's absence, someone's presence, trust

Pattern 3 **verb + noun +** ***in*** **+ adjective**

*She is working on her exams **in** earnest.*

Typical adjectives after *in*:

earnest, private, public

16. In means wearing.

Pattern 1 ***in* + noun**

*She came **in** a long dress, and he was **in** a suit and tie.*

Typical nouns:

bathing suit, coat, dress, hat, skirt, suit, tie, T-shirt

Pattern 2 ***in* + ø noun**

*Everybody went to the party **in** costume.*

Typical nouns:

black (or any color), braces, braids, costume, curls, disguise, drag, high heels, jeans, jewels, make-up, mourning (black), ponytails, (tennis) shoes, shorts, uniform

Related Expression

in the nude not wearing anything

*He sleeps **in the nude**.*

17. In indicates involvement in a career or project.

Pattern ***be/be involved/work* + *in* + ø noun**

*My uncle **is in** business for himself.*

*She **has worked in** insurance for years.*

*They **are involved in** computers.*

Nouns commonly used with this pattern:

accounting, administration, architecture, banking, business, computers, entertainment, government, insurance, journalism, landscaping, law, medicine, politics, publishing, research, stocks and bonds, teaching, training, the air force, the army, the coast guard, the marines, the military, the navy, the reserves

18. In defines an arrangement.

Pattern 1 ***in* + *a* + singular noun**

*The children all sat **in a** circle.*

Nouns often used with this meaning:

circle, group, line, pile, row, stack

Pattern 2 ***in* + plural or noncount noun**

*She put the clothes **in** piles on the floor.*

Nouns often used with this meaning:

bunches, bundles, folds, groups, lines, piles, rows, stacks, alignment, order

19. In indicates composition of money.

Pattern ***in*** **+ noun**

*She always pays **in** cash.*

*I have six dollars **in** change.*

Nouns used with this meaning:

bills, cash, change, checks, coins, dimes, dollars, nickels, pennies, quarters, ones (one-dollar bills), fives, tens, twenties, fifties, hundreds

20. In indicates purpose.

Pattern 1 ***in*** **+ ø noun +** ***of*** **+ noun**

*We are here **in** memory **of** our dear brother.*

*They came **in** search **of** gold.*

Nouns commonly used with this meaning:

aid, appreciation, celebration, commemoration, dedication, honor, lieu, memory, praise, search

Pattern 2 ***in*** **+** ***order*** **+** ***to*** **+ verb**

*She came here **in order to** learn English.*

*They are saving money **in order to** buy a car.*

21. In can define a measurement.

Pattern 1 **number + noun +** ***in*** **+ noun**

*The box is one foot **in** height, eight inches **in** depth, and eight inches **in** width.*

Pattern 2 **verb +** ***in*** **+ noun**

*We weigh **in** pounds; I don't know my weight **in** kilos.*

Typical nouns used after *in*:

centimeters, feet, inches, kilos, meters, miles, ounces, pounds, yards

22. **In** can indicate a **special relationship.**

Pattern 1 ***in* + ø noun + *with* + noun**

All of the parents are working ***in*** *cooperation* ***with*** *the teachers.*

Nouns often used with this meaning:

agreement, alignment, cahoots, collaboration, collusion, combination, common, comparison, competition, conflict, conjunction, connection, contact, cooperation, debate, dispute, good, harmony, rhythm, step, sympathy, touch, trouble

Pattern 2 ***in* + noun + *with* + noun**

She was ***in*** *a fight* ***with*** *him yesterday.*

Typical nouns used before *in*:

argument, debate, exchange, fight, session, situation

23. **In** indicates a **location on the body.**

Pattern 1 **verb + noun + *in* + *the* + body part**

He kicked the attacker ***in the*** *stomach.*

She scratched herself ***in the*** *eye.*

Verbs commonly used with this pattern:

hit, hurt, kick, knock, poke, punch, scratch, slap, strike

Pattern 2 ***have* + noun + *in* + possessive pronoun + noun**

I ***have*** *a pain* ***in*** *my chest.*

She ***has*** *an ache* ***in*** *her left leg.*

Related Expression

to be a pain in the neck to be annoying

Her little sister is eight years old, and ***she's a pain in the neck****.*

24. **In** can indicate a **current state.**

Pattern 1 ***be* + *in* + ø noun**

The papers ***are in*** *circulation.*

Your book ***is in*** *demand.*

The car ***is*** *not* ***in*** *gear.*

Nouns commonly used with this pattern:

bankruptcy, captivity, charge, check, circulation, confinement, conflict, control, debt, demand, jail, power, session, trouble, trust

Nouns referring to the transmission of a car or other vehicle:

drive, first, second, third, fourth, fifth, gear, neutral, park, reverse

25. **In** can indicate a **reaction.**

Pattern **verb + *in* + ø noun**

Her friend left ***in*** *disgust.*

She hung her head ***in*** *disappointment.*

Nouns commonly used after *in*:

apprehension, approbation, approval, assent, compliance, confusion, consent, contempt, defeat, defiance, delight, desolation, disappointment, disdain, disgrace, disgust, dismay, disobedience, dissent, grief, happiness, pain, reaction, relief, sadness, sorrow, the affirmative

Typical verbs used before *in*:

cry, exclaim, go away, leave, react, scream, smile, sneer, squeal, tremble, weep, hang/nod/shake one's head, stick up one's nose

26. **In** can indicate **quantities.**

Pattern ***in*** **+ plural noun**

People came ***in*** *thousands to see the shrine.*

Nouns typically used after *in*:

busloads, carloads, groups of ten, hordes, hundreds, small groups, thousands, truckloads

27. **In** can indicate an **example.**

Pattern **noun + *in* + noun that names first noun**

She has a good friend ***in*** *Mrs. Jones.*

They have a wonderful teacher ***in*** *John Smith.*

28. **In** can mean **when.**

Pattern ***in*** **+ verb in gerund form**

She is correct ***in*** *saying that he was lazy.*

In *signing your name, you are admitting guilt.*

29. In can refer to the **process of a game.**

Pattern ***in*** **+ name of game**

In *baseball, there are nine players on a team.*

The boys have been ***in*** *a game of chess all afternoon.*

Names of common games:

badminton, baseball, bridge, canasta, cards, chess, football, golf, hide-and-seek, hockey, Monopoly, polo, racquetball, solitaire, tag, tennis, volleyball

30. In can mean **on the occasion of.**

Pattern ***in*** **+ ø noun**

She smiled ***in*** *acceptance.*

He nodded his head ***in*** *agreement.*

Nouns often used with this meaning:

acceptance, action, comparison, conclusion, contrast, conversation, defeat, practice, return, the end

31. In can indicate a **warning** or **prediction** of a reaction.

Pattern ***be*** **+** ***in*** **+** ***for*** **+** ***a*** **+ noun**

He ***is in for a*** *shock when he gets here tomorrow.*

Nouns used with this meaning:

rude awakening, shock, surprise, treat

32. In can define the **emphasis** or **perspective** of a statement.

Pattern 1 ***in*** **+ ø noun**

In *fact, this is a very good report.*

The children behave themselves ***in*** *general.*

Nouns commonly used after *in*:

addition, all, all seriousness, analysis, answer, conclusion, fact, general, particular, question, return, reverse, theory, truth

Pattern 2 ***in*** **+** ***one's*** **+ noun**

__In my__ opinion, this is a mistake.

Typical nouns:

case, heart, opinion, view

Pattern 3 ***in*** **+** ***the*** **+ noun**

__In the__ end, everything was fine.

Nouns used with this pattern:

end, final analysis

Pattern 4 ***in*** **+ noun +** ***of*** **+ noun**

She went to the party __in__ spite __of__ her mother's wishes.

__In__ case __of__ fire, leave the building.

Nouns used with this pattern:

case, light, spite, terms, view

33. In can indicate the quality of a noun.

Pattern 1 ***be*** **+ adjective +** ***in*** **+ noun**

They __are__ lacking __in__ the necessities of a decent life.

Those people may be poor in commodities, but they __are__ rich __in__ spirit.

Her sister __is__ blind __in__ one eye.

Pattern 2 ***be*** **+** ***the*** **+ superlative adjective + noun +** ***in*** **+ name of category**

He __is the__ best student __in__ the class.

That __is the__ longest river __in__ the world.

34. In can indicate a topic.

Pattern 1 noun + ***in*** **+ noun**

There was a big improvement __in__ her grades this term.

Typical nouns before *in*:

advance, change, decline, decrease, improvement, increase

Pattern 2 verb + ***in*** **+ noun**

She participated __in__ the planning of the conference.

*He persists **in** calling me on the telephone.*

Typical verbs:

assist, cooperate, help, invest, participate, persist

Pattern 3 adjective + *in* + noun

*This land is rich **in** minerals.*

*She is very interested **in** antique furniture.*

Typical adjectives:

basking, covered, drowning, interested, rich, steeped, submerged

Expressions

in brief briefly

In brief *, we are leaving in five minutes.*

in short briefly

In short, *everybody is getting a raise in pay.*

in advance before an event

*To get tickets to the concert, you have to pay **in advance**.*

in no time very soon

*He will be here **in no time**.*

in two in halves

*We only had one candy bar, so we cut it **in two** and shared it*

in a corner trapped

*With so many bills, and no job, he was really **in a corner**.*

in the dark ignorant of the facts

*My colleagues kept me **in the dark** about their plans to leave the company.*

in good hands (with) well-served, safe

*I know I am **in good hands with** my lawyer.*

tongue-in-cheek sarcastically

*All the nice things he said about her were said **tongue-in-cheek**.*

to be in hot water to be in trouble

*She has been late three times, and now she's really **in hot water** with the boss.*

to be in the black to be out of debt

We have paid off all our credit cards; we are finally ***in the black****.*

in deference to with great respect for

We are acting ***in deference to*** *our chairman's wishes.*

hand-in-hand (adverb) with hands linked

Couples love to walk ***hand-in-hand****.*

arm-in-arm (adverb) with arms linked

She always walked ***arm-in-arm*** *with her mother.*

to be in line to be waiting in an orderly fashion, one after the other

I've been ***in line for*** *two hours to get tickets.*

in compensation for to restore balance, pay for

She made me a dress ***in compensation*** *for the favors I did for her.*

in any case no matter what happens

We will have the party ***in any case****.*

in that case if that happens

In that case *, everybody will stay at home.*

in addition to plus

In addition to *your car payment, you will have to pay for registration and insurance.*

in the air an indication that something has been discussed

A raise in salaries is ***in the air****.*

in sight an indication that something is visible, or will happen soon

We are almost there; the bridge is ***in sight****.*

The work is almost finished; our vacation is ***in sight****.*

Phrasal Verbs

break in (intransitive) enter without permission, removing a barrier

Someone ***broke in*** *yesterday and took their bicycles.*

break in (separable) use something for first time, as a warm-up; to tame

The boy got a new bicycle and couldn't wait to ***break*** *it* ***in****.*

break in on (nonseparable) enter without permission, surprising those inside

We were having a private conversation when he ***broke in on*** *us.*

butt in (intransitive) interrupt a private conversation

Everything was fine until she ***butted in****.*

check in (intransitive) register

After they ***checked in*** *at the desk they went to their room.*

check in (separable) leave something temporarily in a guarded place

The bags were heavy, so he ***checked*** *them* ***in*** *right away.*

chip in/pitch in (intransitive) contribute

The students all ***chipped in*** *and bought the teacher a present.*

close in (on) (nonseparable) approach and surround

The people were scared as the enemy ***closed in on*** *them.*

count in (separable) expect someone's participation

If you are looking for volunteers, ***count*** *me* ***in****.*

do in (separable) tire

I exercised at the gym for two hours, and it ***did*** *me* ***in****.*

drop in (separable) let something fall into a deep container

After you finish the letter, please ***drop*** *it* ***in*** *the mailbox.*

drop in (on) (nonseparable) visit someone without notice

We hadn't seen them in years, and they ***dropped in on*** *us yesterday morning.*

fill in (separable) complete a form

Here is the application form; please ***fill*** *it* ***in****.*

fill in (for) (nonseparable) substitute

Another doctor is ***filling in for*** *her while she's on vacation.*

get in (nonseparable) enter, perhaps with slight difficulty

The door was locked, but we ***got in*** *through the window.*

get in (separable) place inside, perhaps with slight difficulty

The mail slot was too small for the package; I couldn't ***get*** *it* ***in****.*

give in (to) (nonseparable) surrender

I hope she never ***gives in to*** *his wishes; he wants to control her.*

keep in (separable) not allow to go out

The child was sick and his mother ***kept*** *him* ***in****.*

key in (separable) type into the computer

First you have to ***key in*** *your password.*

kick in (intransitive) begin to function, as a backup

*When it gets very cold, the electric heater **kicks in**.*

look in (on) (nonseparable) occasionally check

*Will you **look in on** my mother every afternoon while I'm away?*

squeeze in (separable) make room or time for somebody

*The doctor was busy, but he managed to **squeeze** me **in**.*

step in (intransitive) enter

*I knocked on the door and he told me to **step in**.*

take in (separable) to make smaller

*The skirt was too big, so she **took** it **in** at the waist.*

take in (separable) to comprehend

*I'm not sure she **took in** everything you were saying.*

turn in (intransitive) go to bed

*They were really tired, and had to **turn in**.*

PRACTICE

31-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.

1. Lisa is in the _____.

car	bus	train	ship

2. Please write your answers in your _____.

paper	purse	notebook	calendar

3. Your brother is the best singer in the _____.

team	committee	chorus	board

4. That song was popular in the _____.

80s	morning	last year	school

5. It's 3:30. I'll text you at 4 o'clock. I'll text you in _____.

3 hours	6 years	4 days	30 minutes

6. Please put the _____ in the recycle bin.

garbage	banana peels	used paper	clean paper

7. We have to _____ in our papers to the teacher.
   tell give hand foot
8. I'm going to cut the cake in 12 _____.
   plates cups saucers portions
9. He was coming toward me. He was coming in _____ direction.
   this that the other a
10. She was all wet. She must have been in _____.
   the sunshine the rain the middle outside
11. Were the photos in color or in _____?
   blue and green yellow and gray black and white gray
12. The children sang the songs in perfect _____.
   colors words letters rhythm
13. Shannon doesn't buy new clothes every year. She isn't always in _____.
   style sync school store
14. Your hostess is a great cook. You are in for a _____.
   disaster treat happy hour long time
15. Her school work is getting better. She shows a big improvement in her _____.
   talents book grades tablet

31-2. Use an expression with *in* to express the following:

1. He will have to pass a driving test plus a written test.
2. They have discussed a ban on smoking on campus.

31-3. Use a phrasal verb with *in* to express the following:

1. There was a robbery at our house last night.
2. We were having a private conversation, and he kept interrupting.
3. You should register at the hotel as soon as you arrive.
4. Before the plane lands, you have to complete this form.
5. I will definitely participate!

UNIT 32:
In Back Of

Basic Meaning

1. In back of means located **behind.**

Pattern 1 **noun +** ***in back of*** **+ noun**

There is a beautiful tree ***in back of*** *our house.*

Pattern 2 **verb +** ***in back of*** **+ noun**

Your sister sits ***in back of*** *me in class.*

PRACTICE

32-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.

1. Charles sits in the third row. I sit in the fourth row. I sit in back of _____.

   him   her   them   you

2. They are so lucky! They have a big _____ in back of their house.

   hole   fish   tennis court   telephone pole

UNIT 33:
In Front Of

Basic Meanings

1. In front of means located **before** or **facing** something.

Pattern 1 **noun + *in front of* + noun**

*There is a van **in front of** their house.*

Pattern 2 **verb + *in front of* + noun**

*The teacher usually stands **in front of** the class.*

*He was **in front of** me in line.*

2. In front of can mean **in the future.**

*She has a lot of problems **in front of** her.*

PRACTICE

33-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.

1. Your trip to Spain next month sounds fabulous. You have a lot of new _____ in front of you.

   friends   experiences   bullfighters   flamenco dancers

2. The teacher usually stands in front of the _____.

   office   playground   class   clinic

UNIT 34:
Inside

Basic Meaning

1. **Inside** means **located in the interior part of something; enclosed in**.

Pattern **verb + noun + *inside* + noun**

*There are some little toy animals **inside** the box.*
*She put the money **inside** the envelope.*

As an adverb

Inside means **indoors,** within a building.

*It started to rain, so we went **inside**.*

PRACTICE

34-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.

1. We can't wait to go inside the _____, to see if it will work for our family.
   box house station airport
2. There is a _____ for you inside the envelope.
   party tickets invitation surprise

UNIT 35:
Instead Of

Basic Meaning

1. **Instead of** means **substituting for.**

Pattern **verb + noun + *instead of* + noun**

*They went to Hawaii **instead of** South America.*
*She cooks a lot of vegetables **instead of** meat.*

PRACTICE

35-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.

1. I have changed my mind. I want to go to the movies instead of _____.
   to the mall   seeing a film   to the cinema   watching a movie
2. They changed our flight. We're going to _____ instead of Africa.
   Nigeria   Kenya   Ghana   Australia

UNIT 36:

Into

Basic Meanings

1. **Into** indicates **entrance.**

Pattern 1 **verb + *into* + noun**

*We went **into** his office.*

*I drive **into** the city every day.*

Typical verbs before *into*:

blow, break, come, drive, fall, fly, gaze, get, go, look, move, walk, run, sail, stare, stomp, storm

Pattern 2 **verb + noun + *into* + noun**

*She poured the juice **into** the glass.*

Verbs often used with this pattern:

blow, cram, drive, get, move, place, pour, put, set, throw

2. **Into** can indicate **forced contact.**

Pattern **verb + *into* + noun**

*That car crashed **into** a tree.*

Verbs often used before *into*:

crash, push, pull, run, smash, tear

Expression

to run something into the ground to talk about something too much

*We are sick of hearing about his job; he really **runs it into the ground**.*

3. **Into** can indicate **division.**

Pattern 1 **number + *into* + number = number**

*Three **into** twelve equals four.*

Pattern 2 **verb + noun + *into* + (number) + noun**

*She cut the pie **into** eight wedges.*

*The vase broke **into** a million pieces.*

Typical verbs before *into*:

arrange, break, cut, divide, separate

Typical nouns after *into*:

bits, parts, pieces, slices, wedges

4. **Into** can indicate a **change in condition or form.**

Pattern 1 ***go/get* + *into* + ø noun**

*They **went into** debt after the accident.*

*He always **gets into** trouble at school.*

Nouns often used after *go into*:

action, bankruptcy, debt

Nouns used after *get into*:

danger, condition, shape, trouble

Pattern 2 ***go/get* + *into* + noun**

*He **went into** a rage.*

*They **got into** an argument.*

Typical nouns after *go into*:

a fit, hysterics, a rage, a tantrum

Typical nouns after *get into*:

an argument, a good/bad mood

Related Expressions

to turn into to change into a different form

*The water **turned into** ice.*

*The stranger **turned into** a friend.*

to turn something into to change the form of something else

*The witch **turned** the prince **into** a frog.*

to burst into flames to suddenly be on fire

*The trash pile **burst into flames**.*

to get into hot water to get into trouble

*We **got into hot water** for skipping class.*

5. Into can indicate interest or occupation.

Pattern ***be/go* + *into* + noun**

*Her husband **is** really **into** football.*

*All of her daughters **went into** law.*

Phrasal Verbs

break into (nonseparable) begin an activity

*She was so excited that she **broke into** a song.*

check into (nonseparable) get information, investigate

*After she called the police, they went to **check into** the situation.*

look into (nonseparable) get information, investigate

*The lawyer promised to **look into** our case.*

run into (nonseparable) to see an acquaintance by chance

*We **ran into** each other at the mall yesterday.*

talk into (separable) to convince someone to do something

*She didn't want to come with us, but I **talked** her **into** it.*

PRACTICE

36-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.

1. He ______ into the room and started shouting orders.

   threw gazed stomped fell

2. She has to start saving money or she will go into _____.

   jail debt poverty trouble

3. They are always getting into _____.

   trouble football jail a frog

36-2. Use an expression with *into* to express the following:

1. I don’t want the teacher to catch me doing something wrong!

36-3. Use a phrasal verb with *into* to express the following:

1. They convinced me to go with them.
2. I wonder if I’ll see anybody I know at the game.

UNIT 37:
Like

Basic Meanings

1. Like can mean **similar to.**

Pattern ***be, look, seem*** **+** ***like*** **+ noun**

She ***is like*** *her sister.*
They don't ***look like*** *their mother.*

2. Like can indicate **similar behavior.**

Pattern **verb +** ***like*** **+ noun**

He talks ***like*** *his father.*
She swims ***like*** *a duck.*

Common verbs before *like*:

act, behave, play, sing, talk, walk

3. Like can describe excessive behavior.

Pattern **verb + noun +** ***like*** **+ abstract noun**

She spends money ***like*** *water.*

Nouns commonly used with this meaning:

anything, water

Related Expressions

like crazy a lot, excessively

like mad a lot; excessively

He dances ***like*** *crazy.*
She works ***like*** *mad.*

4. **Like** can indicate an **example.**

Pattern **noun + *like* + noun**

They grow root vegetables **like** *beets, carrots, radishes, and turnips.*

5. **Like** can mean **characteristic of.**

Pattern ***be* + *like* + noun + *to* + verb**

It's *not* ***like*** *you* ***to*** *complain.*

PRACTICE

37-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.

1. I like tropical fruit, like _____.

apples	pears	mangoes	cherries

2. She never stops dancing. She dances like _____.

crazy	silly	pretty	graceful

3. He is very cooperative. It's not like him to _____.

be quiet	be silly	argue	be normal

UNIT 38:
Near

Basic Meanings

1. **Near** means **close to** in terms of distance.

*His house is **near** his office.*
*She lives **near** San Francisco.*

2. **Near** means **within a short time.**

*His birthday is **near** Thanksgiving.*

PRACTICE

38-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.

1. We both have birthdays in April. Her birthday is _____ mine.
   like near far from next to
2. The librarian’s house is two blocks from the library. She lives near _____.
   her job the school the drugstore her gym

UNIT 39:
Next To

Basic Meaning

1. Next to means **at the side of.**

*Her best friend sits **next to** her at the table.*
*I will put my things in the basket **next to** yours.*

PRACTICE

39-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.

1. Charlotte is going to sit next to _____ in the cafeteria.
   me and Taylor　　Taylor and I　　I and Kim　　you and he
2. Basketball is my second favorite game, next to baseball. Baseball is my _____.
   best　　worst　　second favorite　　favorite

UNIT 40:
Of

Basic Meanings

1. Of indicates **belonging** or **connection.**

a. *Of* identifies a thing as a connection or **part of another thing.**
the pages of the book
the leaves of the tree

b. *Of* identifies people, animals, or plants as **part of a larger group.**

Pattern **noun + *of* + *this/that* + noun**

*the women **of that** family*

*the people **of that** religion*

Nouns commonly used after *of*:

city, club, company, country, culture, descent, faith, family, gender, genus, group, ilk, organization, race, religion, society, species

c. *Of* identifies ideas or **works with their author,** artist, or composer.

Pattern **noun + *of* + noun**

*the works **of** Shakespeare*

*the methods **of** the teacher*

Nouns often used before *of*:

essays, ideas, method, music, novels, opinion, paintings, plays, poems, poetry, songs, work, writing

d. *Of* identifies an individual or **special member of a group** or institution.

Pattern **noun + *of* + noun**

*the president **of** the class*

*the coordinators **of** the program*

Nouns commonly used before *of*:

captain, citizen, coordinator, dictator, head, hero, heroine, leader, loser, manager, mayor, member, president, secretary, servant, star, student, teacher, treasurer, villain, winner

e. *Of* identifies a **person's occupation** or area of specialization.

Pattern noun + *of* + noun

*a professor **of** mathematics*

*students **of** cardiology*

*practitioner **of** medicine*

f. *Of* indicates a **connection with a place.**

Pattern noun + *of* + noun

*a native **of** Alaska*

*the birds and animals **of** Australia*

Nouns often used before *of*:

animal, bird, citizen, graduate, inhabitant, native, people, resident

g. *Of* indicates a **connection with a period of time.**

*the music **of** the eighties*

*the dances **of** her youth*

*the fourth **of** July*

*the last day **of** the year*

*April **of** last year*

2. **Of** can name another noun.

Pattern *the* + noun + *of* + noun

*They established **the** city **of** Los Angeles.*

*It is near **the** Bay **of** Bengal.*

*I don't know **the** name **of** the school.*

3. **Of** can indicate the **location of a part.**

Pattern preposition + *the* + noun + *of* + noun

*The passage is in **the** middle **of** the page.*

*I have a knot on **the** back **of** my head.*

*The numbers are at **the** top **of** the page.*

4. **Of** indicates a **category of description.**

Pattern **noun + *of* + noun**

a. Typical nouns used before *of* indicating **category:**

brand, category, class, color, form, kind, make, pattern, shape, size, sort, style, type

*What kind **of** shoes are you looking for?*

*The color **of** your dress is beautiful.*

b. Nouns used before *of* indicating type of **container:**

bag, bowl, box, can, container, load, loaf, package, piece, plate, tube

*We bought two boxes **of** cereal.*

c. Nouns used before *of* indicating **sensation:**

feel, sense, smell, sound, taste, texture

*I didn't like the smell **of** that meat.*

d. Nouns before *of* indicating **value:**

cost, price, value

*The price **of** the dress was outrageous.*

e. Nouns before *of* indicating **measurement:**

depth, height, length, measurement, weight, width

*Do you know the measurement **of** your waist?*

5. **Of** indicates a **number** or **proportion.**

Pattern 1 **number/adjective + *of* + plural noun**

*Three **of** the girls are our daughters.*

*All **of** the women are from New York.*

Adjectives used before *of*:

all numbers

all, another, any, both, each, either, enough, few, many, most, neither, none, plenty, several, some

Pattern 2 **noun + *of* + plural noun**

*That store has a couple **of** books I want to buy.*

*A few **of** them are hard to find.*

Nouns used before *of*:

a couple, a few, a lot, lots

Pattern 3 **adjective + *of* + noncount noun**

*Much **of** the furniture is damaged.*

Adjectives used before *of*:

all, little, much, some

Pattern 4 **noun + *of* + noncount noun**

*A little **of** the information is correct.*

*A lot **of** it is incorrect.*

Nouns used before *of*:

a little, a lot, lots

6. **Of** can **identify** abstract nouns by their source.

a. sound

Pattern ***the* + noun + *of* + noun**

*I heard **the** cry **of** a baby.*

*There was **the** noise **of** a car.*

Nouns of sound commonly used before *of*:

buzz, crash, cry, growl, hiss, howl, hum, hush, laughter, music, noise, silence, sound, whisper

b. force

Pattern **noun + *of* + noun**

*A gust **of** wind blew in my face.*

*We all need a breath **of** fresh air.*

Nouns of force often used before *of*:

breath, gush, rush, whiff

c. sight

Pattern **noun + *of* + noun**

*She had a vision **of** musicians playing violins.*

*The blue of her eyes was the color **of** the ocean.*

Nouns of sight often used before *of*:

blue, color, picture, sight, vision

d. sensation

Pattern ***the*** **+ noun +** ***of*** **+ noun**

The touch ***of*** *his hand made me feel safe.*

The *smell* ***of*** *bread baking was wonderful.*

Nouns of feeling often used before *of*:

feel, sense, smell, taste, texture, touch

e. expression

Pattern **noun +** ***of*** **+ noun**

He shouted words ***of*** *anger.*

She breathed a sigh ***of*** *relief.*

Nouns of expression often used before *of*:

cry, groan, moan, shout, sigh, smile, tears, word

Nouns of feeling often used after *of*:

anger, anguish, delight, elation, excitement, fear, frustration, happiness, joy, relief, sadness, surprise

7. Of can indicate material or composition.

Pattern **noun +** ***be*** **+ past participle +** ***of*** **+ noun**

My new bag ***is*** *made* ***of*** *leather.*

Water ***is*** *made up* ***of*** *hydrogen and oxygen.*

Past participles used before *of*:

composed, formed, made, made up (used with natural phenomena)

Nouns often used after *of*:

aluminum, brass, cardboard, clay, copper, cotton, crystal, fabric, glass, gold, iron, jute, leather, metal, nylon, paper, plastic, platinum, polyester, rayon, sand, silk, silver, string, tin, water, wire, wood, wool

8. Of can identify contents or topic.

Pattern 1 **noun +** ***of*** **+ noun**

She ate a salad ***of*** *lettuce, tomatoes, and avocados.*

My uncle wrote a book ***of*** *short stories.*

The book has pictures ***of*** *flowers.*

*A group **of** students went to the museum.*

Common expressions:

words of love, a sign of weakness, a method of teaching

Pattern 2 **verb + *of* + noun**

*I dreamed **of** you.*

*They often talked **of** their youth.*

Verbs commonly used before *of*:

complain, dream, hear, learn, sing, speak, talk, think

Pattern 3 **verb + noun + *of* + noun**

*She informed me **of** my appointment.*

Verbs used with this pattern:

advise, inform, remind, tell

Pattern 4 **adjective + *of* + noun**

*She is capable **of** better work.*

*They are independent **of** their parents.*

Adjectives commonly used with this pattern:

capable, ignorant, proud, repentant, sick, tired

Related Expression

be reminiscent of to remind someone of

*Your perfume **is reminiscent of** my mother.*

9. **Of** can indicate dedication of time to a **special purpose.**

Pattern **noun + *of* + noun**

*That was a day **of** national mourning.*

*We stood for a moment **of** silence.*

Nouns often used before *of*:

day, moment, month, period, season, semester, time, week, year

Nouns often used after *of*:

celebration, exercise, festivity, fun, happiness, meditation, mourning, prayer, quiet, reading, reflection, rest, silence, studying, thanksgiving, work

10. **Of** can indicate **absence.**

Pattern **noun + *of* + noun**

*There is a need **of** cooperation.*

*The lack **of** funds is our biggest problem.*

Nouns commonly used before *of*:

absence, dearth, necessity, need, lack, paucity, scarcity

11. **Of** can indicate **separation.**

Pattern 1 **verb + *of* + noun**

*He was cured **of** cancer.*

*The dog died **of** old age.*

*She is rid **of** a nuisance.*

Pattern 2 **verb + noun + *of* + noun**

*They tried to relieve her **of** pain.*

Related Expression

to get rid of to cause to no longer have

*I **got rid of** my old car.*

12. **Of** can indicate one's **feelings** toward the object.

Pattern 1 **noun + *of* + noun**

*We appreciate the pleasure **of** your company.*

*He has a love **of** learning.*

Nouns often used before *of*:

anguish, challenge, delight, desire, distrust, enjoyment, excitement, fear, frustration, happiness, hatred, joy, love, need, pleasure, stress

Pattern 2 ***to the* + noun + *of* + noun**

*We had a big party, **to the** delight **of** the children.*

Nouns often used before *of*:

anguish, annoyance, delight, disgust, enjoyment, excitement, happiness, pleasure

13. **Of** can indicate an **attitude** toward something.

Pattern ***be* + adjective + *of* + noun**

*They **are** respectful **of** the environment.*

Adjectives commonly used before *of*:

ashamed, aware, certain, conscious, disrespectful, envious, fond, inconsiderate, mindful, proud, repentant, respectful, sure, suspicious, trusting, uncertain, unsure, wary

14. **Of** can indicate a **reason.**

*I came here because **of** you.*

*She lost all her money on account **of** her husband.*

15. **Of** can describe **behavior.**

Pattern ***be* + adjective + *of* + noun**

*It **was** very kind **of** Sally to help us.*

*It **was** cruel **of** him to ignore her.*

Adjectives commonly used with this pattern:

bad, careless, conscientious, crazy, crude, cruel, delightful, evil, good, hateful, ignorant, irresponsible, kind, mean, nice, responsible, rude, selfish, sweet, thoughtful, thoughtless, typical, unconscionable

16. **Of** can **describe** a noun by connecting it to a quality.

Pattern **noun + *of* + noun**

*She is a woman **of** honor.*

*They are people **of** integrity.*

Nouns of quality often used after *of*:

dignity, faith, few words, good intentions, honor, integrity, high (low) morals, strength, wisdom

Expressions

a ctxm1e of scenery/pace a ctxm1e in place or activity

*We needed **a ctxm1e of scenery**, so we went to the Caribbean.*

right of way the legal right to proceed before another person

The accident was the other driver's fault because I had the ***right of way****.*

PRACTICE

40-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.

1. *A*, *B*, and *C* are the first letters of _____.

   my name　　your name　　Mrs. Jackson　　the alphabet

2. The opinions of the English teacher are _____.

   poetry　　spelling　　private　　writing

3. She teaches algebra. She's a professor of _____.

   numbers　　girls　　students　　mathematics

4. Independence Day in the United States is the _____ of July.

   four　　fourth　　forth　　day

5. We bought six _____ of bread to make sandwiches for the party.

   loaves　　loaf　　halves　　box

6. You can hear the _____ of the helicopters inside the house.

   song　　music　　noise　　talking

7. I only want two pieces of fruit. Please give me _____ of bananas.

   a couple　　pair　　twice　　a bunch

8. His blue eyes were the color of _____.

   money　　paint　　the sky　　blood

9. I gave away all of my old sweaters. I got _____ of them.

   new　　old　　twenty　　rid

10. He won the election, to the _____ of his opponents.

    happiness　　excitement　　disgust　　relief

40-2. Use an expression with *of* to express the following:

1. I didn't have the legal right to drive in that lane.
2. We needed to get away, and took a trip to the beach.

UNIT 41:
off

Basic Meanings

1. **Off** indicates **movement** from one place to another.

Pattern 1 **verb + *off* + noun**

*The car ran **off** the road.*

*We got **off** the train in New Orleans.*

Verbs used with this pattern:

blow, come, dive, drive, fall, get, go, hop, jump, limp, move, roll, run, slide, slip, walk

Related Expression

to be off (adverb) to leave

*It's late, so we must **be off**.*

Pattern 2 **verb + noun + *off* + noun**

*They shoveled the snow **off** the driveway.*

Verbs used with this pattern:

blow, brush, clean, clear, drive, get, move, pull, push, roll, run, scrape, shove, shovel, slide, slip, sweep, take, wash

2. **Off** can indicate **separation.**

Pattern **verb + *off* + noun**

*She cut **off** her beautiful long hair.*

Verbs commonly used with this meaning:

break, chop, cut, pick, pull, saw, send, shave, take, tear, throw

3. **Off** means **connected to** or **not far from.**

Pattern ***be*** **+ *off* + noun**

*Our street **is off** Main Street.*

Typical nouns after *off*:

beach, coast, highway, island, road, street, turnpike

4. **Off** can indicate **behavior** that is not as usual or no longer true.

Pattern 1 ***be/go*** **+ *off* + ø noun**

*The children **are off** school today.*

*I'm glad your cousin finally **went off** drugs.*

Nouns commonly used with this meaning:

alcohol, cigarettes, drugs, duty, school, work

Pattern 2 ***be/go*** **+ *off* + one's + noun**

*She **went off** her diet again.*

Typical nouns:

diet, medication, medicine, pills

Related Expressions

to be off course to be going (or thinking) in the wrong direction

*We got lost, and **were off course** for about three hours.*

*They **got off course** while doing the research, and wasted a lot of time.*

to be off one's game not be playing as well as usual

*The golf champion **was off his game** yesterday.*

to be off one's rocker to be crazy

*She feeds caviar to her cat; I think **she's off her rocker**.*

5. **Off** can indicate **lack of contact.**

Pattern 1 **verb + *off* + noun**

*Please keep **off** the grass.*

Verbs used with this pattern:

get, keep, lay, stay

Pattern 2 **verb + noun + *off* + noun**

*Please keep the dog **off** the grass.*

Verbs commonly used with this pattern:

get, keep, move, take

6. Off means cause to stop functioning.

Pattern **verb + *off* + noun**

*Please turn **off** the radio.*

Typical verbs with this meaning:

shut, switch, turn

Typical nouns after *off*:

the music, the lights, the machine, the air conditioning, the heat, the motor, the cellphone, the computer

Expressions

off the record not official or public

*This is **off the record**, but I heard that our friends got married last week.*

off the charts too high or successful to measure

*Our ratings are **off the charts**.*

off the wall unacceptable

*I'm sorry, but your ideas are really **off the wall**.*

off chance (noun) unlikely possibility

*I stopped by, on the **off chance** that you would be at home.*

off-limits (adverb) forbidden territory

*The bars are **off-limits** for teenagers.*

off-color (adjective) in very bad taste, with a sexual reference

*I can't believe that she tells so many **off-color** jokes.*

offhand (adjective, adverb) very casual, casually

*He made a few **offhand** remarks that I didn't appreciate.*

hit it off to become friends right away

*Your sister and my brother really **hit it off** at the party.*

be well off to have few problems

*Now that she has retired, she **is** pretty **well off**.*

be better/worse off to have fewer or more problems

*She **is** a lot **better off** than she was before.*

Phrasal Verbs

back off (intransitive) stop trying

*The man was too aggressive and was told to **back off**.*

beg off (intransitive) cancel a commitment

*Our babysitter didn't come; she **begged off** at the last minute.*

break off (separable) terminate a relationship

*They couldn't agree on anything, so they **broke off** their engagement.*

call off (separable) cancel an event

*We **called** the picnic **off** because of rain.*

check off (separable) mark on a list

*She knows I was there; she **checked off** my name.*

drop off (intransitive) fall asleep

*She kept **dropping off** during the meeting.*

get off (nonseparable) leave a vehicle you can walk around on

*We **got off** the ship in Jamaica.*

get off (separable) remove, with some difficulty

*She's trying to **get** the mud **off** her shoes.*

goof off waste time

*Stop **goofing off** and get to work!*

kick off (intransitive) the beginning of an event

*The conference starts tomorrow; it will probably **kick off** at about ten.*

kill off (separable) to destroy all members of a species

*There is a danger that certain birds will be **killed off**.*

knock off (separable) to stop doing something

*I'm sick of your teasing. **Knock** it **off**!*

lay off (separable) fire from a job

*They didn't need so many workers, so they **laid** him **off**.*

live off (nonseparable) eat nothing but

*We have been **living off** fruit and vegetables for weeks.*

mark off (separable) to designate areas for a game

*They are **marking** the field **off** for the soccer match.*

nod off fall asleep

*He is jet-lagged, and keeps **nodding off** during the day.*

pull off (separable) manage to achieve success

*The clients were difficult, but he managed to **pull off** the sale.*

put off (separable) postpone

*They **put** the picnic **off** until Tuesday.*

put off (separable) repel

*They didn't invite her back; her bad manners really **put** them **off**.*

round off (separable) use the nearest whole number

*Don't use all those fractions; **round off** all the numbers.*

sell off (separable) to sell everything

*He **sold off** all his property and left town.*

sign off (intransitive) to end a program

*My favorite radio announcer **signs off** at midnight.*

take off (intransitive) leave

*The plane **took off** at four-thirty.*

take off (separable) remove clothing

*The sweater was too warm so he **took** it **off**.*

wear off (separable) to disappear because of wear

*I **wore off** the tread on my tires when I drove to California.*

wipe off (separable) to erase; to destroy completely

*The gunman **wiped** his fingerprints **off** the weapon.*

write off (separable) to no longer consider someone or something to be of value

*He **wrote off** his sister when she got into trouble.*

*He **wrote off** the money she owed him, as he knew she would never pay it back.*

PRACTICE

41-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.

1. She _____ off the diving board and made a beautiful dive.

slipped	jumped	fell	walked

2. Our house is just off the highway. It is _____ the highway.

close to	far from	on	in

3. The children have a holiday today. They are off _____.

cruise	birthday party	school	vacation

4. It's way too bright in here. Please turn off the _____.

air conditioning	lights	music	heater

41-2. Use an expression with *off* to express the following:

1. This is not official, but I heard that the teacher is going to a different school.
2. His behavior is totally unacceptable.
3. The kids are not allowed to go to that bar.
4. My friends really liked my sister.
5. Her situation has improved.

41-3. Use a phrasal verb with *off* to express the following:

1. They cancelled their wedding.
2. I was falling asleep during the meeting.
3. Hey—stop bullying!
4. He was fired from his job because there were too many workers.
5. Nobody liked his bad manners.
6. What time does your plane leave?

UNIT 42:
On

Basic Meanings

1. On indicates location **higher than something and touching it; on top of.**

Pattern ***on*** **+ noun**

The newspaper is ***on*** *the table.*

Please sign your name ***on*** *the dotted line.*

2. On indicates an **outside location.**

Pattern ***on*** **+** ***the*** **+ noun**

He was standing ***on the*** *corner of First Street and Maple Avenue.*

Let's have a barbecue ***on the*** *balcony.*

Typical nouns after *on the*:

balcony, beach, corner, fence, field, ground, hill, horizon, lawn, patio, porch, roof, terrace

3. On indicates a **surface location.**

Pattern 1 ***on*** **+** ***the*** **+ noun**

She rides her bicycle ***on the*** *sidewalk.*

Typical nouns after *on the*:

boardwalk, court, (baseball) diamond, field, highway, path, rink, road, rocks, screen, sidewalk, street

Pattern 2 ***on*** **+ ø noun**

That is the only place ***on*** *earth where she feels safe.*

Typical nouns after *on*:

earth, land, page one (or any other number), solid ground, water

4. On indicates certain inside surface locations.

Pattern ***on*** **+** ***the*** **+ noun**

There is a fly ***on the*** *ceiling.*

Typical nouns after *on the*:

ceiling, floor, stairs, steps, wall, window first/second (or other number) floor

5. On indicates surface contact.

Pattern **verb + noun +** ***on*** **+ noun**

The child pasted the picture ***on*** *the page.*

Typical verbs:

glue, hold, paste, stick

6. On indicates location in a part of an area.

Pattern ***be*** **+** ***on*** **+** ***the*** **+ noun +** ***of*** **+ noun**

The porch ***is on the*** *side* ***of*** *the house.*

Typical nouns after *on the*:

border, bottom, edge, end, exterior, inside, interior, left, outside, outskirts, first/second (or other number) page, right, side, surface, top

7. On means facing.

Pattern ***be*** **+** ***on*** **+ noun**

Their house ***is on*** *the beach.*

What street ***is*** *your house* ***on****?*

Typical nouns:

beach, highway, river, road, street

8. On indicates movement to something; onto.

Pattern 1 **verb +** ***on*** **+ noun**

It rained ***on*** *your bicycle last night.*

*She jumped **on** the bed.*

Typical verbs before *on*:

bounce, climb, fall, get, hop, jump, knock, pounce, pound, rain, stamp, step, tread

Pattern 2 **verb + noun + *on* + noun**

*She poured water **on** the plant.*

*He sprinkled salt **on** the meat.*

Typical verbs:

drip, drop, load, pour, put, shower, smear, spill, splash, spray, spread, sprinkle, squirt, throw

9. **On** indicates **travel in vehicles** in which one can walk.

*She goes to work **on** the bus.*

*They went **on** the train to Philadelphia.*

Typical nouns:

airplane, bus, ship, train

Typical verbs used before *on*:

get, go, ride, sit, travel

10. **On** indicates an **individual method of travel.**

*He came over **on** his bike.*

*She was sore from riding **on** a horse.*

Typical nouns:

all fours, bicycle, foot, one's hands and knees, motorcycle, roller blades, scooter, skateboard, skates, skis, sled, snowboard, surfboard, tiptoe, tricycle

11. **On** means **wearing.**

Pattern 1 **verb + *on* + noun**

*The man has **on** a suit and tie.*

*The lady put **on** her new dress.*

Pattern 2 **verb + noun + *on* + noun**

*She put the bracelet **on** her wrist.*
*He had a hat **on** his head.*

Typical verbs:

get, have, keep, put, try, wear

Related Expression

to put on to get dressed in
*She **put on** her shoes and went out.*

12. On indicates physical support.

Pattern 1 **verb + *on* + noun**
*The child leaned **on** his father.*
*The children sat **on** small chairs.*

Typical verbs used before *on*:

cling, hang, lean, lie, rest, sit, sleep, stand

Pattern 2 **verb + noun + *on* + noun**
*She draped the cloth **on** the table.*
*He laid the sick child **on** the bed.*

Typical verbs:

drape, hang, lay, place, put

Pattern 3 ***be* + *on* + noun**
*The beads **are on** a string.*
*The popsicle **is on** a stick.*

Related Expression

to be on one's side to support in spirit
*They are my friends; I'm sure they **are on my side**.*

13. On can indicate trust in something or someone.

Pattern 1 **verb + *on* + noun**
*He relies **on** me to pay his rent.*

Typical verbs used before *on*:

bank, bet, count, depend, rely

Pattern 2 ***be*** **+ adjective +** ***on*** **+ noun**

*She **is** dependent **on** her husband.*

Adjectives used before *on*:

based, dependent, predicated

14. On can indicate frequency.

Pattern ***on*** **+ ø noun**

*He visits twice a month **on** average.*

Nouns commonly used after *on*:

average, occasion, weekends, Saturdays (or other days) nice (or other adjective) mornings, afternoons, evenings, nights

15. On can indicate a form of record.

Pattern ***on*** **+ ø noun**

*He wrote it **on** paper.*

*They recorded the song **on** tape.*

Typical nouns:

cassette, compact disc, disk, film, microfilm, paper, record, tape

16. On means by means of.

Pattern 1 **verb +** ***on*** **+ noun**

*That car runs **on** diesel fuel.*

*They survive **on** very little food.*

Typical verbs used before *on*:

gain/lose weight, keep alive, live, make do, run, scrape by, survive, thrive, train

Typical nouns used after *on*:

calories, electricity, food, fuel, gas, income, salary

Pattern 2 **verb + noun +** ***on*** **+ noun**

*I bought the furniture **on** credit.*

*He wrote his paper **on** the computer.*

17. On can mean using at the present time.

Pattern ***be*** **+ *on* + *the* + noun**

*The manager can't help you now; she **is on the** telephone.*

Nouns commonly used with this pattern:

computer, Internet, machine, telephone

Expression

to log on to connect to the Internet

*Don't interrupt him now; he has just **logged on**.*

18. On can indicate the cause of a mishap.

Pattern 1 **verb + noun + *on* + noun**

*I cut my finger **on** a piece of glass.*

*She hurt herself **on** the swing.*

Pattern 2 **verb + *on* + noun**

*He tripped **on** a fallen branch.*

Verbs commonly used before *on*:

choke, fall, stumble, trip

19. On can indicate a motive for action.

Pattern 1 **verb + *on* + ø noun**

*They went to Houston **on** business.*

Nouns used after *on*:

business, command, instinct, reconnaissance, request, sabbatical, spec, vacation

Related Expressions

on purpose deliberately

*She didn't want to see him; she stayed home **on purpose**.*

on behalf of in place of, for the sake of

*I went to the meeting **on behalf of** my mother, who was out of town.*

on account of because of

The picnic was canceled on account of the rain.

Pattern 2 ***on*** **+** ***the*** **+ noun +** ***of***

*They went overseas **on the** orders **of** the commander.*

*I bought the car **on the** recommendation **of** my son.*

Typical nouns:

advice, assumption, authority, calculations, charge, orders, premise, recommendation

20. On can indicate a type of trip.

Pattern **verb +** ***on*** **+ noun**

*The class went **on** an excursion around the city.*

Nouns used after *on*:

cruise, excursion, field trip, flight, honeymoon, journey, mission, outing, safari, trip

21. On can indicate a topic.

Pattern 1 **noun +** ***on*** **+ noun**

*We have a good book **on** gardening.*

*He wrote a long article **on** the economy.*

Typical nouns before *on*:

article, book, debate, discussion, paper, report, research, speech, thesis, thoughts

Pattern 2 **verb +** ***on*** **+ noun**

*She spoke **on** the environment.*

*I wish he would expound **on** his ideas.*

Typical verbs before *on*:

expound, report, speak, write

22. On can show an effect of something on something else.

Pattern **noun + *on* + noun**

We got a good buy ***on*** *our car.*

There is a new tax ***on*** *perfume.*

Typical nouns used before *on*:

ban, discount, embargo, encumbrance, evidence, good buy, restriction, sale, tax, war

23. On can indicate possession at the time.

She had four dollars ***on*** *her.*

He didn't have a gun ***on*** *him.*

24. On can indicate membership in an exclusive group.

Pattern ***be*** **+** ***on*** **+** ***the*** **+ noun**

She ***is on the*** *basketball team and the honor roll.*

Typical nouns after *on*:

board, committee, council, crew, faculty, honor roll, jury, list, payroll, squad, staff, team

25. On can indicate an occasion.

Pattern 1 ***on*** **+ noun**

Congratulations ***on*** *your graduation.*

They went out to dinner ***on*** *their anniversary.*

Typical nouns:

anniversary, arrival, birth, birthday, death, departure, news, occasion, wedding, weekend

Pattern 2 ***on*** **+ ø noun**

They are leaving ***on*** *Saturday (or any day).*

Pattern 3 ***on*** **+** ***the*** **+ noun**

Example:

We are leaving ***on the*** *ninth of August (or any date).*

They are going to New York ***on the*** *weekend.*

26. **On** (adverb) can indicate **continuation.**

Pattern **verb + *on***

They told us to move ***on****.*

He was tired, but he drove ***on****.*

Typical verbs:

drag, drive, go, keep, live, move, press, read, run, talk, walk, work

Related Expression

keep on + **gerund** continue to do something

She told us to ***keep on*** *reading.*

27. **On** expresses **offensive action.**

Pattern 1 **verb + *on* + noun**

The troops marched ***on*** *the city at dawn.*

Typical expressions before *on*:

march, turn

pull a gun, pull a knife

Pattern 2 **noun + *on* + noun**

They planned a raid ***on*** *the nightclub.*

Typical nouns:

assault, attack, march, raid

28. **On** can indicate a **state** or condition.

Pattern 1 ***be* + *on* + ø noun**

The new windows ***are on*** *order.*

Our new line of products ***is on*** *display at the showroom.*

Typical nouns:

approval, board, call, course, display, duty, edge, fire, guard, high/low speed, high/low volume, hold, leave, loan, one's best behavior, order, parole, record, sale, schedule, stand-by, strike, tap, target, track, trial, vacation

Related Expressions

on the whole weighing the good against the bad

__On the whole__ they enjoy their work.

on hand available

He is always __on hand__ to help us.

online connected to the Internet

Every day more and more people are __online__.

on one's own independent

He is twenty-one and he lives __on his own__.

Pattern 2 ***be* + *on* + *a/the* + noun**

She __is on a__ diet.

Typical nouns with *a*:

budget, diet, roll, spree

Related Expressions

on a roll to be experiencing repeated success

He has received four job offers; he is __on a roll__.

Typical nouns with *the*:

brink, edge, line, mark, wayon the spot to be forced to make a difficult decision

The young man was __on the spot__ when his two best friends had an argument.

on the fence to be undecided

The congressman hasn't decided which way to vote: he is __on the fence__.

on the air to be broadcasting on the radio or television

The news is __on the air__ at six o'clock.

on the bench to be the judge in court

Do you know who __is on the bench__ at her trial?

on the blink to be broken

We can't copy it; the copier is __on the blink__.

on the road to be traveling

Our band is going to be __on the road__ for two weeks.

on the condition that if

You can go on the trip __on the condition__ that you pay for it.

29. On can indicate **means of communication.**

*I heard it **on** the radio.*
*There are a lot of movies **on** television.*
*She found it **on** the Internet.*

Related Expression

to go viral on the Internet/a form of social media to appear digitally rapidly
*Her video went viral **on** the Internet.*

30. On can indicate the **person who pays.**

*The party is **on** me.*

Expression

on the house paid for by the management of the restaurant
*The drinks are **on the house**.*

31. On can mean **at the same time as.**

Pattern 1 ***on*** **+ verb in gerund form**
*She fainted **on** hearing the news.*

Pattern 2 ***on*** **+ ø noun**
*She feeds the baby **on** demand.*
*The car is yours **on** receipt of the title.*

Typical nouns after *on*:

approval, demand, receipt, reflection, second thought, sight

32. On can indicate **acquisition.**

Pattern 1 **verb +** ***on*** **+ noun**
*They took **on** five new technicians at the plant.*
*She wanted to add **on** a family room.*

Typical verbs used before *on*:

add, bring, build, heap, load, pile, put, take

Pattern 2 **verb + noun + *on* + noun**

They forced a new assistant ***on*** *us.*

Typical verbs used before *on*:

add, build, force, heap, load, pile, push, put

Related Expression

to put on to get dressed in

She ***put on*** *her shoes and went out.*

33. On can indicate attitude toward the object.

Please have pity ***on*** *the people who live there.*

They agree ***on*** *the important issues.*

Related Expression

have a crush on to have a frivolous romantic interest in

The young boy ***had a crush on*** *his teacher.*

34. On can indicate behavior concerning the object.

Pattern 1 ***be*** **+ adjective + *on* + noun**

The teacher ***is*** *much too easy* ***on*** *the boys.*

I think I ***was*** *too rough* ***on*** *her yesterday.*

Typical adjectives before *on*:

easy, hard, rough, soft, strict, tough

Pattern 2 **verb + *on* + noun**

The old lady doted ***on*** *her only grandchild.*

Typical verbs before *on*:

center, concentrate, dote, dwell, err, harp, pick, prey, put pressure, wait

Related Expression

to lay hands on to attack

If someone ***lays hands on*** *you, call the police.*

35. On can indicate a **consequence to another person.**

Pattern **verb + *on* + noun**

We were on a family vacation and my brother got sick ***on*** *us.*

Please don't fall asleep ***on*** *me; I need you to keep me awake.*

Typical verbs:

cheat, die, faint, fall asleep, get sick, go quiet, rat, tattle, tell

Expressions

on time at the expected time

Mary is always ***on time*** *for class.*

on the contrary the opposite is true

We don't have too many books; ***on the contrary****, we don't have enough.*

on the other hand from another viewpoint

She is never on time; ***on the other hand****, she is a very hard worker.*

on the tip of my tongue refers to something almost remembered, but not quite

I can't remember his name, but it's right ***on the tip of my tongue****.*

on your mark the first command of three at the start of a race

On your mark *, get set, go!*

to depend on the outcome is decided by a future event

I want to have the party outside, but it ***depends on*** *the weather.*

Phrasal Verbs

call on (nonseparable) ask

If you need help, ***call on*** *me.*

carry on (intransitive) to behave a little wildly

She ***carries on*** *every night.*

carry on with (nonseparable) continue an effort

Who is going to ***carry on with*** *the program when he leaves?*

catch on (intransitive) understand

My sister isn't interested in him; I'm afraid he will never ***catch on****.*

get on (nonseparable) enter a vehicle you can walk around on; mount a horse or bicycle

*We **got on** the bus in New York.*

get on (separable) dress with slight difficulty

*See if you can **get** these shoes **on**.*

get on (intransitive) grow old

*She is **getting on**; she is eighty-seven now.*

log on (intransitive) to connect to the Internet

*She **logged on** to the Internet to communicate with her friend across the country.*

miss out on lose an opportunity

*He **missed out on** a good party.*

pass on (separable) tell or give to somebody else

*When you have finished reading this article, please **pass** it **on**.*

pick on (nonseparable) selectively mistreat

*That teacher likes the boys but **picks on** the girls.*

turn on (separable) cause to function

*First, you have to **turn** the machine **on**.*

PRACTICE

42-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.

1. I saw him outside, _____ on the corner.

   holding   pleasing   standing   driving

2. When we're at the beach, we like to walk on the _____.

   corner   water   sidewalk   boardwalk

3. Our garage is on the left side of the _____.

   house   page   inside   paper

4. Is your house on this _____?

   city   town   street   neighborhood

5. The baby can't walk yet, but he gets around on his _____.

   motorcycle   bike   hands and knees   skateboard

6. Please keep your _____ on, so you don't get cold.

necktie gloves bathing suit necklace

7. They always go to the movies on _____.
   evenings mornings weekends weekend
8. The senator spoke on _____.
   health care roller skates newspaper magazine
9. She's busy after school, because she's on the _____.
   gym basketball team driveway practice
10. The parts needed to fix my car aren't here, but they are on _____.
   time line mechanic order

42-2. Use an expression with *on* to express the following:

1. I'm trying to connect to the Internet.
2. My computer isn't working.
3. Elena is never late.
4. She has a silly romantic interest in the camp counselor.
5. 1-2-3-GO!

42-3. Use a phrasal verb with *on* to express the following:

1. We have to board the bus now.
2. It's hard for her to get dressed.
3. It's too bad you couldn't go to the party.
4. Don't let those bullies tease your little sister.
5. You can connect to the Internet here.

UNIT 43:
Onto

Basic Meanings

1. Onto indicates **movement** from one position to another one.

Pattern 1 **verb + *onto* + noun**

*The child hopped **onto** the bed.*

Typical verbs used before *onto*:

drip, fall, hop, jump, move, run, spill, step

Pattern 2 **verb + noun + *onto* + noun**

*We moved all the books **onto** the desk.*

Typical verbs used with this pattern:

drip, drop, move, spill, transfer

2. Onto indicates **knowledge of misbehavior.**

Pattern ***be* + *onto* + noun.**

*The police **are onto** that gang about the missing money.*

PRACTICE

43-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.

1. The milk spilled all over the counter, and then onto the _____.

   floor top bowl glass

2. He _____on the test, but the teacher is onto him.

   failed wrote cheated passed

UNIT 44:

On Top Of

Basic Meaning

1. On top of indicates a position **higher than the object, and usually touching it.**

Pattern **verb +** ***on top of*** **+ noun**

They put the blanket ***on top of*** *the sheets, and the bedspread* ***on top of*** *the blanket.*

I'm sure I left my keys ***on top of*** *the desk.*

Expression

to be on top of something to be sure about one's knowledge or control of something

Her son had a hard time learning math, but he ***is on top of*** *it now.*

PRACTICE

44-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.

1. For a special treat, she put whipped cream on top of her _____, and a cherry on top of that.

   ice cream   soup   sandwich   milk

2. It was so cold that I put an extra blanket on top of my _____.

   hat   bed   coat   floor

UNIT 45:
Opposite

Basic Meaning

1. Opposite means **facing; across from.**

Pattern **verb + *opposite* + noun**

*I sat **opposite** him at the library last night.*

*My house is **opposite** the drugstore.*

PRACTICE

45-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.

1. I ____ opposite a well-known author at the dinner party.

worked talked served sat

UNIT 46:
Out

Basic Meanings

1. Out can indicate **removal** and is separable from the verb used.

Pattern 1 **verb + noun + *out***

*Please take the trash **out**.*

Pattern 2 **verb + *out* + noun**

*Please take **out** the trash.*

Typical verbs used with *out*:

carry, cross, cut, get, kick, leave, move, take, tear, throw

2. Out of indicates **movement from inside.**

Pattern 1 **verb + *out of* + noun**

*He was freezing when he got **out of** the water.*

Typical verbs:

come, crawl, drink, drive, fall, get, go, hop, jump, run, step

Pattern 2 **verb + noun + *out of* + noun**

*She took the cake **out of** the oven.*

Typical verbs:

drive, get, grab, move, pour, pull, push, rip, sip, squeeze, take, tear

3. Out can indicate **distribution** and is separable from the verb used.

Pattern 1 **verb + noun + *out***

*The teacher told me to hand these papers **out**.*

Pattern 2 **verb + *out* + noun**

*The teacher told me to hand **out** these papers.*

Typical verbs used with *out*:

give, hand, mail, pass, send

4. Out of indicates absence.

Pattern ***be*** **+** ***out of*** **+ noun**

*The boss **is out of** the office.*
*My neighbors **are out of** the country this month.*

Related Expression

to be out of town to be absent from one's place of residence

*The boss **is out of town** this week.*

5. Out of indicates a distance from.

Pattern **verb +** ***out of*** **+ noun of place**

*The restaurant is about three miles **out of** town.*
*They live two blocks **out of** the city limits.*

6. Out of can mean no longer in supply.

Pattern ***be/run*** **+** ***out of*** **+ plural or noncount noun**

*I can't make a cake because I **am out of** eggs.*
*They had to walk to the gas station because they **ran out of** gas.*

Typical noncount nouns used after *out of*:

breath, gas, luck, money, stock, time, work

7. Out of can mean not as usually expected.

Pattern ***be*** **+** ***out of*** **+ noun**

*All her clothes **are out of** style.*
*Unfortunately, her children **are out of** control.*

Typical nouns used after *out of*:

commission, context, control, date, fashion, focus, place, practice, reach, season, shape, style, sync, the ordinary, the way, tune

8. Out of indicates the basic **ingredients** or **composition** of something.

Pattern 1 **verb + noun + *out of* + noun**

*She makes the skirts **out of** scarves.*

*He crafted the tables **out of** twigs.*

Pattern 2 **past participle of verb + *out of* + noun**

*The statue was carved **out of** stone.*

*That bread is made **out of** whole wheat flour.*

Typical verbs used before *out of*:

build, carve, craft, create, fabricate, fashion, make, sculpt, sew, shape

9. Out of can indicate a **fraction.**

Pattern 1 **number + *out of* + number + noun**

*Nine **out of** ten people on that street have new cars.*

Pattern 2 **number + noun + *out of* + noun**

*Only three women **out of** the whole group volunteered to help.*

10. Out of can indicate **beyond.**

Pattern **verb + *out of* + noun**

*We waved until he was **out of** sight.*

*He is **out of** touch with reality.*

Typical nouns used after *out of*:

bounds, danger, hearing, line, order, sight, touch

11. Out of can indicate a **reason** for action.

Pattern **verb + *out of* + abstract noun**

*She invited him to the party **out of** kindness.*

*He only went **out of** curiosity.*

Typical nouns used after *out of*:

animosity, anxiety, compassion, cruelty, curiosity, fear, kindness, love, loyalty, malice, meanness, passion, pity, respect, spite, sympathy

Expressions

out of doors outside

*The children love to play **out of doors**.*

out of it not conscious of reality

*He hasn't adjusted to his new lifestyle; he is really **out of it** these days.*

out of the past exactly as in the past

*The music and dancing were **out of the past**.*

*She is so old-fashioned: her ideas are **out of the** (nineteen) **sixties**.*

be put out be resentful

*She **was** really **put out** that you didn't invite her to your party.*

Phrasal Verbs

ask out (separable) invite on a date

*He **asks** her **out** all the time, but she never goes with him.*

blow out (separable) to extinguish with air

*She **blew out** all the candles on her birthday cake.*

break out (intransitive) start suddenly

*A fire **broke out** in the field yesterday.*

check out (separable)

1. investigate

*Our air-conditioning isn't working; the repairman is coming to **check** it **out**.*

2. borrow officially

*He went to the library to **check out** that book.*

check out (of) (intransitive) pay the bill at a hotel

*Your friends **checked out** early this morning.*

*They **checked out of** the hotel at six o'clock.*

chew out (separable) scold

*The boss really **chewed** her **out** for being late for the meeting.*

chicken out (on) (nonseparable) not act because of fear

He wanted to call the boss at home, but he ***chickened out****.*

He promised to do it, but he ***chickened out on*** *me.*

close out of (nonseparable) sell all of an item, and no longer carry it

That store is ***closing out of*** *small appliances, and is having a huge sale.*

come out (nonseparable) make public that one is LGBTQ

She ***came out*** *as lesbian last summer, after her first year at college.*

count out (separable) not expect someone's participation

If you're planning a meeting for Saturday, ***count*** *me* ***out****.*

creep out (separable) to cause nervousness or fear

That horror movie really ***creeped*** *me* ***out****.*

drop out (of) (intransitive) leave a group or society

She didn't enjoy the club, and finally ***dropped out****.*

She ***dropped out*** *of the club.*

eat out (intransitive) eat at a restaurant, rather than at home

That family ***eats out*** *at least once a week.*

figure out (separable) solve; understand

She can't seem to ***figure out*** *her problems.*

fill out (separable) complete in writing

Please ***fill out*** *these forms.*

find out (separable) learn by investigating

Can you help me ***find out*** *where they live?*

freak out (separable) to cause heightened emotion

The young girls ***freaked out*** *when their favorite singer appeared on stage.*

get out of (nonseparable) find an excuse to break a commitment

She said she was sick, and ***got out of*** *washing the dishes.*

go out with (nonseparable) date someone

She ***goes out with*** *my brother every Saturday night.*

hang out (with) (intransitive) do nothing, with friends

Those kids just ***hang out*** *every day after school.*

They ***hang out with*** *other students.*

keep out (of) (intransitive) not enter

They told us to ***keep out****.*

They told us to ***keep out of*** *their yard.*

knock out (separable) cause to lose consciousness

The champion ***knocked*** *the other boxer* ***out*** *in the first round.*

look out (for) (intransitive) be careful

We told them to ***look out****.*

We told them to ***look out for*** *cars when crossing the street.*

luck out (intransitive) be lucky

Tickets were hard to get, but we ***lucked out*** *and got two in the front row.*

make out (intransitive) be successful

We sold all of our stuff at the garage sale and ***made out*** *pretty well.*

pass out (intransitive) faint

She hadn't eaten all day, and she ***passed out****.*

pass out (separable) distribute

They asked us to help ***pass out*** *flyers announcing the new restaurant.*

pick out (separable) select

Here are the strawberries; ***pick out*** *the best ones to serve.*

pig out (intransitive) to eat excessively

The party food was so good that a lot of people really ***pigged out****.*

point out (separable) call attention to

The agent ***pointed out*** *that the house was in a convenient neighborhood.*

put out (separable) extinguish; display

He ***put out*** *the fire quickly.*

She ***put out*** *all her best china.*

stand out (from) (intransitive) be noticeable

The tall girl in the chorus ***stands out****.*

She ***stands out*** *from all the short girls.*

step out (of) (intransitive) leave a room or building

It was so hot in there that we decided to ***step out*** *for a few minutes.*

stress out (separable) to cause tension

She loves her job, but it ***stresses*** *her* ***out*** *sometimes.*

talk out of (separable) convince someone not to do something

He was going to marry that girl, but his mother ***talked*** *him* ***out of*** *it.*

try out (separable) use before buying, to find out if suitable

*They let you **try** the car **out** before you buy it.*

try out (for) (nonseparable) audition

*She is going to **try out for** the musical show at school.*

turn out (intransitive) indicates a result

*How did the dress you were making **turn out**?*

wash out (of) (separable) remove from clothing with soap and water

*I tried to **wash** that spot **out** of my dress.*

watch out (for) (intransitive) be careful

*He told her to **watch out**.*

*He told her to **watch out for** danger.*

wear out (separable) use until ruined

*I **wore** my shoes **out**, and had to throw them away.*

work out (separable) solve a problem in a relationship

*That couple had a lot of problems, but they **worked** them **out**.*

work out (intransitive) do exercise

*He **works out** every evening.*

PRACTICE

46-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.

1. My sweater was full of holes, so I _____ it out.

gave	threw	took	got

2. In addition to the holes in my sweater, it was also out of _____.

the country	the blue	style	wool

3. When they saw the fire, they _____ out of the house.

drove	pushed	ran	stood

4. She’s on vacation. She will be out of the _____ for a week.

office	door	work	beach

5. He’s been running, and now he’s out of _____

money	time	the office	breath

6. The female candidate won the election. _____ out of every four people voted for her.

   One Two Three Six

7. He doesn't have much money, but he gives to the homeless out of _____.

   home kindness his heart his mind

46-2. Use an expression with *out* or *out of* to express the following:

1. He invited me for a date.
2. They have already left the hotel and paid their bill.
3. He stopped going to school when he was sixteen.
4. She fainted in class yesterday.
5. Please choose four apples that look good.
6. The firemen extinguished the fire.
7. I spilled coffee on the sofa and tried to remove the spot.
8. They exercise together at the gym.

UNIT 47:
Outside

Basic Meaning

1. Outside (of) means not within.

Pattern **verb + *outside (of)* + noun**

*Don't worry, the dog is **outside (of)** the house.*

PRACTICE

47-1. Choose the best word or words for the blank space.

1. After the accident, the police officer told me to stay outside of the _____.

car house hospital ambulance

UNIT 48:
Over

Basic Meanings

1. **Over** means **above.**

Pattern 1 **verb + *over* + noun**

*The plane flew **over** our building.*
*The pictures were hanging **over** the sofa.*

Typical verbs used before *over*:

be, bend, float, fly, hang, hover, lean, look, shine, watch

Pattern 2 **verb + noun + *over* + noun**

*She hung the pictures **over** the sofa.*

Typical verbs used with this pattern:

float, fly, hang, hold, install, nail, place, suspend

Expression

to hold something over one's head to control, threaten, or punish someone because of a known fact or misdeed

*She knows he was fired from his last job; now she **holds that over his head**.*

2. **Over** can mean **higher than.**

Pattern ***be* + *(way) over* + noun**

*The price of that vacation **is (way) over** our budget.*
*The water at this end of the pool **is over** your head.*

3. **Over** (adverb) can mean **more than.**

Pattern ***over* + number + noun**

*He was driving at **over** eighty miles an hour.*

*I have gained **over** five pounds this month.*

4. Over indicates movement **above** something and **to the other side** of it.

Pattern 1 **verb + *over* + noun**

*The children jumped **over** the puddles on their way to school.*

*We had to climb **over** the mountain to get here.*

Typical verbs used before *over*:

climb, cross, drive, get, go, hop, jump, look, run, skate, skip, step, stumble, trip

Pattern 2 **verb + noun + *over* + noun**

*The young player batted the ball **over** the fence.*

*We had fun throwing rocks **over** the creek.*

Typical verbs:

bat, carry, drive, hit, throw

5. Over can mean **covering** something.

Pattern **verb + noun + *over* + noun**

*The child wore a warm jacket **over** her dress.*

*The lady sewed patches **over** the holes.*

Typical verbs:

drape, hang, have, paint, place, pour, pull, put, sew, spread, tape, wear

6. Over indicates **control.**

Pattern 1 ***rule/preside* + *over* + noun**

*She **rules over** her family like a tyrant.*

*The chairman asked me to **preside over** the meeting tonight.*

Pattern 2 ***have control/power* + *over* + noun**

*They **have** no **control over** their actions.*

*He likes to **have power over** his associates.*

7. Over can mean location **on the other side of** something.

*That restaurant is **over** the state line.*
*They live **over** the river.*

Typical verbs:

be, be located, dwell, lie, live, reside

8. (All) over can mean **in many parts of** a place.

Pattern **verb + *all* + *over* + *the* + noun**

*They have traveled **all over the** world.*
*She looked **all over the** city for her friend.*

Typical nouns:

city, country, field, floor, house, place, playground, sidewalk, state, street, table, town, world, yard

Typical verbs:

broadcast, crawl, drive, look, roll, run, send, spill, throw, travel, walk

9. Over can mean **during.**

Pattern 1 ***over* + noun**

*We had an interesting discussion **over** breakfast this morning.*

Typical nouns after *over*:

breakfast, coffee, dinner, drinks, lunch, snacks, tea

Pattern 2 ***over* + *the* + noun**

*They decided to read the papers **over the** holidays.*
*She has been sick **over the** last three weeks.*

Nouns commonly used with this pattern:

holidays, summer, weekend, winter

next (number) hours, days, weeks, months, years

last (number) hours, days, weeks, months, years

10. Over can indicate a **topic.**

Pattern **verb + *over* + noun**

*They argued **over** politics all night.*

*I wish you wouldn't fight **over** money.*

Typical verbs used before *over*:

argue, battle, cry, fight, grieve, gush, puzzle, sigh, worry

11. Over (adverb) can mean again.

Pattern **verb + noun + *over***

*She didn't like my work; she told me to do it **over**.*

Typical verbs used before *over*:

do, read, start, write

Expressions

be over one's head more than one can understand

*I can do simple math, but that problem **is** way **over my head**.*

over the telephone by means of telephone

*She gave me that information **over the telephone**.*

head over heels completely

*He is **head over heels** in love with her.*

As an adverb

(all) over finished

*The party was **all over** at nine o'clock.*

Phrasal Verbs

blow over (intransitive) be forgotten

*Don't worry about your argument with him; I'm sure it will **blow over**.*

fall over (intransitive) collapse

*She was sitting at her desk when she suddenly **fell over**.*

go over (nonseparable) review

*He **went over** my algebra with me.*

hand over (separable) give reluctantly

*The children had to **hand over** all the money they found.*

have over (separable) invite to one's home

*We want to **have** you **over** soon.*

look over (separable) review

*Please **look over** these papers before the meeting tomorrow.*

pass over (separable) not give an expected promotion

*She expected to be promoted to director, but she was **passed over** this year.*

pick over (separable) find and choose the best of a lot

*Some of these cherries are not ripe; you will have to **pick** them **over** carefully.*

pull over (intransitive) drive to the side of the road

*We were driving too fast, and the police officer made us **pull over**.*

pull over (separable) move to cover something

***Pull** the sweater **over** your head.*

run over crush with vehicle

*She **ran over** the package with her car.*

start over begin again

*I made a lot of mistakes, so I **started** my homework **over**.*

take over (intransitive) become the boss, or act like a boss

*The children don't like to play with that boy because he always tries to **take over**.*

take over (separable) carry something to another place

*Please **take** this letter **over** to your neighbor.*

think over (separable) consider the pros and cons

*Your offer interests us; we will **think** it **over**.*

turn over (intransitive) change position from face down, face up, or vice versa

*Most babies **turn over** in the first six months of life.*

turn over (separable) move something from top to bottom, or vice versa

*Some kids **turned** all the trash cans **over** last night.*

PRACTICE

48-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.

1. The airplane was flying over our _____.

clothing	furniture	building	party

2. Don’t go in that end of the swimming pool. The water is over your _____.

weight	age	height	head

3. He hit a home run. The ball went over the _____.

street	base	fence	home plate

4. She has no control over her _____.

dogs	roof	garage	door

5. To get there, you have to go over the _____.

street	state line	house	horse

6. He drives way too fast. He always goes over _____.

55 mph	60 mph	the speed limit	the traffic lights

7. We looked all over the _____ for your keys.

ceiling	clothing	pockets	hotel room

8. They don’t get along. They are always fighting over _____.

traffic	money	the hotel room	the state line

48-2. Use an expression with *over* to express the following:

1. She is really in love with him.
2. That course is too hard for me.

48-3. Use a phrasal verb with *over* to express the following:

1. Nobody was there when he collapsed.
2. The police officer stopped me when I was driving too fast.
3. He didn’t get the promotion.
4. We are considering your offer.
5. Could you please read these contracts before the meeting?

UNIT 49:
Past

Basic Meanings

1. Past means **beyond.**

Pattern ***be*** **+** ***past*** **+ noun referring to a place**

The gas station ***is*** *on your left, just* ***past*** *the shopping center.*

2. Past indicates **movement in front of and beyond** a place.

Pattern **verb +** ***past*** **+ noun**

We drove ***past*** *your house on our way to the party.*

They often walk ***past*** *the park.*

3. Past means **older than.**

Pattern ***be*** **+** ***past*** **+ noun referring to age**

His daughter ***is past*** *her teens now.*

I'm sure he ***is past*** *fifty.*

4. Past means **no longer able** to do something.

Pattern ***be*** **+** ***past*** **+ verb in gerund form**

She ***is*** *bitter now, and* ***past*** *caring.*

The men ***were*** *exhausted and* ***past*** *working.*

5. Past (adverb) means **later than.**

Pattern ***be*** **+ past + noun referring to time**

It is ten ***past*** *three in the afternoon.*

*They left at half **past** seven.*

PRACTICE

49-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.

1. I can take you to work. I go past _____ on the way to mine.
   your apartment   your office   your house   your sister

2. He plans to retire when he is past _____.
   sixty-five   the goalpost   the corner   the state line

UNIT 50:
Through

Basic Meanings

1. Through indicates **passage within** something.

Pattern **verb + *through* + noun**

The children drank their milkshakes ***through*** *straws.*

The highway was closed, and we had to come ***through*** *the city.*

Typical nouns used after *through*:

funnel, passage, pipe, straw, tunnel

a place building, city, country, park, state, town

2. Through can indicate a **gateway** or **obstacle** between two places.

Pattern 1 **verb + *through* + noun**

We came ***through*** *the front door.*

He drove ***through*** *the red light and got a ticket.*

Typical nouns:

barricade, barrier, curtains, customs, door, entrance, gate, hole, intersection, light, slot, stop sign, window

Pattern 2 **verb + noun + *through* + noun**

The mail carrier pushed the letters ***through*** *the slot.*

Typical verbs used before *through*:

bring, carry, force, pull, push, receive, send, take

3. Through can indicate **vision beyond something.**

Pattern ***see/show* + *through* + noun**

The window is so dirty that I can't ***see through*** *it.*

*The tablecloth needs a liner; the table legs **show through** it.*

Typical nouns used after *through*:

clouds, fabric, fog, glass, smoke, window

Related Expression

to see through somebody to detect insincerity

*That woman pretends to be nice, but I can **see through her**.*

4. Through can indicate the parts beginning, between, and including.

Pattern ***from*** **+ noun +** ***through*** **+ noun**

*They have to work **from** Monday **through** Friday.*

*Please read **from** chapter one **through** chapter four.*

5. Through can mean finish something that requires effort.

Pattern 1 **verb +** ***through*** **+ noun**

*I have to get **through** school before I can get married.*

Typical verbs used before *through*:

get, go, live, struggle, suffer

Typical nouns after *through*:

school, training, work

Pattern 2 ***be*** **+** ***through*** **+** ***with*** **+ noun**

***Are** you **through with** your exams yet?*

Typical nouns used with this pattern:

course, exams, red tape, trouble

Related Expression

to go through to experience something difficult

*He is **going through** a divorce.*

6. Through can indicate in all parts of a place; throughout

Pattern 1 **verb +** ***(all) through*** **+** ***the*** **+ noun**

*We walked **all through the** garden.*

Pattern 2 **verb + noun + *(all) through* + *the* + noun**

*They distributed flyers **all through the** neighborhood.*

Typical nouns used after *through*:

building, city, country, garden, house, neighborhood, state, town

Related Expression

to go/look through something to look at all the contents of something, hoping to find something

*I **went through** my files and found these documents.*

*I **looked through** my papers, but I couldn't find the certificate.*

Typical nouns used after *through*:

boxes, closets, correspondence, drawers, files, letters, notes, papers, records, things

7. (All) through (or throughout) can mean during an entire event or period.

Pattern 1 **verb + *through* + noun**

*Those women talked **through** the whole game.*

*The baby finally slept all **through** the night.*

Typical verbs before *through*:

cheat, cry, laugh, play, sit, sleep, stay, talk, wait, watch, worry

Pattern 2 **verb + noun + *through* + noun**

*She cared for her father **through** his illness.*

Verbs commonly used with this pattern:

abuse, care for, help, ignore, wait for, wait on

Typical nouns used after *through*:

afternoon, breakfast, day, dinner, game, illness, life, lunch, meal, month, morning, night, ordeal, performance, play, time, war, wedding, week, year

Related Expressions

to see something through to stay with something until it is finished.

*Don't worry, we will **see** your project **through**.*

to see somebody through to stay with somebody until he is out of trouble.

*I will **see** you **through** this problem; I promise.*

8. Through can mean by means of.

Pattern **verb + noun + *through* + noun**

*We heard the news **through** friends.*

*They bought that apartment **through** an agency.*

Typical nouns after *through*:

agency, contacts, friends, gossip, newspaper, translator

instruments of vision binoculars, glasses, lenses, microscope, periscope

Related Expressions

to hear something through the grapevine to get news unofficially

*We **heard** about your engagement **through the grapevine**.*

9. Through can indicate a reason.

Pattern **verb + noun + *through* + noun**

*She achieved success **through** determination and hard work.*

***Through** an error in our accounting, we have overcharged you.*

Typical nouns after *through*:

carelessness, determination, fault, frustration, generosity, greed, hard work, help, kindness, luck, misinformation, negligence, selfishness, an error, a mistake

Expression

to go through with something to continue doing something; to not give up

*I can't believe you are still going **to go through with** your plans.*

Phrasal Verbs

carry/follow through (separable) complete a project

*He has some good ideas; I hope he can **carry** them **through**.*

carry/follow through with (nonseparable) complete

*I hope he can **carry through with** his plans.*

come through (intransitive) perform as one has promised

*She promised to help us; I hope she **comes through**.*

fall through (intransitive) collapse

*All his plans to move to California **fell through**.*

show through (separable) to give someone a tour of a building

*When we went to Washington, D.C., our congressman **showed** us **through** the Capitol.*

PRACTICE

50-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.

1. She got a ticket because she went through a _____.

   counter red light concert movie

2. I can't see through the _____, because it's so dirty.

   couch chair garage window

3. Before I can graduate, I have to get through this _____.

   street course office window

4. She took care of him all through his _____.

   illness work concert bed

5. We got the visas through the _____.

   airplane passports embassy stewardess

50-2. Use a phrasal verb with *through* to express the following:

1. Do you think he will do what he promised?
2. Our contract failed.
3. She gave us a tour of the museum.

UNIT 51:
Throughout

Basic Meanings

1. **Throughout** means **in all parts** of a place.

*There are spiders **throughout** the building.*

2. **Throughout** means during **an entire period of time.**

*She stays at the beach **throughout** the summer.*

PRACTICE

51-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.

1. I've had that song in my head throughout the _____.

   building   day   years   city

2. When our team won the championship, there were victory celebrations throughout the _____.

   city   bus station   airport   game

UNIT 52:
To

Basic Meanings

1. To indicates the **destination of a verb.**

Pattern 1 **verb + *to* + ø noun**

*I'm going **to** bed.*

*They ride **to** school on the bus.*

Nouns commonly used after *to*:

bed, breakfast, church, dinner, jail, lunch, school, work

Exception

go ø home

*It is time to **go home.***

*They **went home** on the bus.*

Pattern 2 **verb + *to* + *the* + noun**

*We go **to the** park every afternoon.*

*Call when you get **to the** office.*

Verbs often used with *to*:

come, drive, extend, fall, fly, get, go, hike, move, return, ride, rise, run, send, ship, sink, walk

2. To indicates the **destination of a noun.**

Pattern 1 **noun + *to* + noun**

*The train **to** New York leaves at six o'clock.*

*We wanted to go on a cruise **to** the Caribbean.*

Typical nouns used before *to*:

airplane, bridge, bus, climb, cruise, flight, highway, path, race, road, subway, train, trip, way

Pattern 2 **noun + *be* + *to* + noun**

The train ***is to*** *New York.*

His question ***is to*** *me.*

Typical nouns used before *to*:

answer, card, donation, explanation, gift, letter, memo, offer, petition, present, proposal, question, request, suggestion

3. To indicates a **transfer** from a person or place.

Pattern **verb + noun + *to* + noun**

He delivers the mail ***to*** *the office.*

She mentioned her plans ***to*** *me.*

Typical verbs used before *to*:

bring, carry, deliver, describe, distribute, donate, explain, give, hand, introduce, lend, mention, pass, present, read, recommend, reveal, send, shout, show, sing, speak, submit, suggest, take, tell, write

4. To indicates a **beneficiary.**

Pattern 1 **verb + noun + *to* + noun**

They made a toast ***to*** *the bride and groom.*

Typical verbs used with this pattern:

award, dedicate, devote, give, make

Typical nouns used before *to*:

award, dedication, gift, memorial, monument, plaque, present, remark, scholarship, statement, toast

Related Expression

as a favor to for the benefit of

We came to help you ***as a favor to*** *your father.*

Pattern 2 ***to* + *one's* + noun**

If you shout, someone will come ***to*** *your aid.*

*It is **to** your benefit to join the credit union.*
*The police came **to** my rescue when my car broke down.*

5. To indicates an effect on the recipient.

Pattern 1 ***be* + noun + *to* + noun**

*He **is** a credit **to** his mother and father.*
*The airplane noise **is** a disturbance **to** the neighborhood.*

Nouns commonly used before *to*:

annoyance, bother, challenge, credit, detriment, discredit, disturbance, help, nuisance

Pattern 2 ***be* + adjective + *to* + noun**

*His calls **are** very annoying **to** me.*

Typical adjectives used before *to*:

abhorrent, acceptable, annoying, beneficial, boring, confusing, crucial, detrimental, distasteful, disturbing, fascinating, gratifying, harmful, helpful, hurtful, important, meaningful, obnoxious, pleasing, precious, preferable, repulsive, satisfying, unacceptable, unfavorable, unimportant, vexing, worrisome

Related Expression

to be to one's taste to be personally pleasing to someone

*The apartment is large and expensive, but **it's** not **to my taste**.*

Pattern 3 ***to* + *one's* + noun**

***To my** surprise, everybody was at work on Saturday.*
***To their** delight, the campaign was a great success.*

Typical nouns:

astonishment, chagrin, delight, disappointment, discomfort, disgrace, disgust, embarrassment, horror, satisfaction, surprise

6. To can indicate a reaction.

Pattern 1 **verb + *to* + noun**

*She responded **to** my letter right away.*
*I hope you don't object **to** my offer of help.*

Typical verbs used before *to*:

adapt, admit, agree, appeal, consent, listen, object, pay attention, prefer, react, relate, reply, respond, revert, subscribe

Pattern 2 **noun + *to* + noun**

She has an allergy ***to*** *that medicine.*

Do you have an answer ***to*** *that question?*

Typical nouns:

allergy, answer, appeal, aversion, consent, objection, preference, reaction, relation, reply, response

Pattern 3 ***be*** **+ adjective + *to* + noun**

She ***is*** *allergic* ***to*** *that medicine.*

We ***are*** *indebted* ***to*** *you for helping us.*

Typical adjectives:

accustomed, allergic, grateful, indebted, thankful

7. **To** can indicate someone's **behavior toward another person.**

Pattern ***be*** **+ adjective + *to* + noun**

He ***was*** *very cruel* ***to*** *me.*

She ***has been*** *hostile* ***to*** *her neighbors.*

Typical adjectives:

affectionate, appreciative, attentive, available, charming, cold, considerate, cordial, cruel, devoted, dreadful, faithful, friendly, gracious, hospitable, hostile, inconsiderate, kind, loyal, mean, nice, obedient, open, pleasant, polite, respectful, sassy, warm

8. **To** can indicate **attachment.**

Pattern 1 **verb + noun + *to* + noun**

We will paste the wallpaper ***to*** *the bedroom walls.*

She pinned the flowers ***to*** *my lapel.*

Pattern 2 ***be*** **+ past participle of verb + *to* + noun**

Your paper ***is*** *stapled* ***to*** *mine.*

The gum ***is*** *stuck* ***to*** *my shoe.*

Typical verbs used with these patterns:

add, adhere, affix, apply, attach, glue, hold, nail, paste, pin, press, screw, sew, staple, stick, tape

9. To indicates the **end of a period of time; until.**

Pattern ***from*** **+** ***to*** **+ noun**

They work ***from*** *morning* ***to*** *night.*

He was here ***from*** *two* ***to*** *five.*

10. To means **before,** in telling time.

Pattern ***It*** **+** ***be*** **+ number of minutes +** ***to*** **+ hour**

It is *ten (minutes)* ***to*** *three in the afternoon.*

It was *a quarter (fifteen minutes)* ***to*** *four.*

11. To can indicate **continuous repetition of an action.**

Pattern 1 **verb +** ***from*** **+ noun +** ***to*** **+ same noun**

We went ***from*** *door* ***to*** *door with our information sheets.*

The bus rocked ***from*** *side* ***to*** *side.*

Common expressions:

door to door, house to house, place to place, side to side

Pattern 2 **noun + hyphen +** ***to*** **+ hyphen + same noun + noun**

*They have door-****to****-door service.*

12. To can indicate a **comparison of value.**

Pattern 1 ***be*** **+ adjective +** ***to*** **+ noun**

His work ***is*** *comparable* ***to*** *hers.*

Your car ***is*** *similar* ***to*** *mine.*

Typical adjectives:

comparable, inferior, preferable, similar, superior

Pattern 2 ***compare*** **+ noun +** ***to*** **+ noun**

Please don't ***compare*** *my work* ***to*** *yours.*

Pattern 3 ***compared* + *to* + noun**

*She is of medium height, but **compared to** her sister, she is tall.*

13. To can indicate a problem or solution.

Pattern **noun + *to* + noun**

*The strike is a threat **to** our survival.*

*She knows the secret **to** success.*

Typical nouns used before *to*:

Problems: **barrier, obstacle, threat**

Solutions: **answer, antidote, boost, clue, directions, guide, instructions, key, secret, solution**

14. To can indicate ownership, membership, and connection.

Pattern 1 ***belong/pertain* + *to* + noun**

*The book **belongs to** me.*

*Her friends **belong to** that club.*

*This discussion does not **pertain to** you.*

Pattern 2 **adjective + *to* + noun**

*Your comments are not pertinent **to** this topic.*

Adjectives used with this meaning:

attached, attributable, committed, connected, dedicated, engaged, exclusive, important, married, obligated, pertinent, promised, related, relevant, seconded, tied

15. To can indicate an exclusive relationship.

Pattern ***the* + noun + *to* + noun**

*This is **the** key **to** my front door.*

*Have you seen **the** jacket **to** my new suit?*

*She is **the** new secretary **to** the chairman.*

Typical nouns:

assistant, case, cover, door, jacket, key, knob, lid, part, secretary, strap, ticket, top

16. To indicates the **accompaniment of sound.**

Pattern **verb + *to* + noun**

*We danced **to** the rhythm of the music.*

*I wake up **to** the noise of the city.*

Typical nouns:

beat, blare, buzz, honk, hum, music, noise, rhythm, roar, sound, strum, tune

17. To means **leading to an extreme condition.**

Pattern **verb + noun + *to* + noun**

*He tore the paper **to** pieces.*

*She drives him **to** distraction.*

Related Expressions

beat/grind to a pulp

bore to death

carry to extremes

chill to the bone

cook to perfection

drive to distraction/insanity

grind to dust

move to tears

push/carry/take to the limits

sing/rock to sleep

smash to bits

soak to the skin

starve/freeze to death

tear to pieces/shreds

18. To indicates an **upper limitation** of an approximation.

Pattern **number + *to* + number**

*It is two **to** two-and-a-half feet long.*
*He is thirty-eight **to** forty years old.*

19. To indicates a **relationship** between the subject and the object.

Pattern 1 **noun + *be* + adverb + *to* + noun,** to show location

*The library **is** close **to** the park.*
*The new theater **is** adjacent **to** the mall.*

Typical adverbs:

at an angle, close, next

Pattern 2 **noun + *be* + adjective + *to* + noun**

*That line **is** parallel **to** this one.*

Typical adjectives:

adjacent, parallel, perpendicular

Pattern 3 **noun + *to* + noun,** to indicate position

*They sat back **to** back.*
*She came face **to** face with danger.*

Pattern 4 **number + *to* + number,** to give the score of a game

*The score was three **to** two.*

Pattern 5 **amount + *to* + amount,** to show equality

*There are four quarts **to** a gallon.*

Pattern 6 **amount + *to* + amount,** to show ratio

*He gets thirty miles **to** a gallon on the highway in his new car.*

20. To can indicate **restriction.**

Pattern 1 **verb + noun + *to* + noun**

*We limited him **to** three meals a day, with no sugary snacks.*
*They confined her **to** jail for thirty-six hours.*

Typical verbs:

bind, confine, hold, limit, restrict, sentence, tie

Pattern 2 **past participle of verb (adjective) + *to* + noun**

*He is limited **to** three meals a day.*
*She is confined **to** jail for thirty-six hours.*

Expressions

to rise to the occasion to force oneself to act correctly

I was annoyed when he walked in, but I ***rose to the occasion*** *and shook his hand.*

to subscribe to to pay for and receive a periodical regularly

How many magazines do you ***subscribe to****?*

She ***subscribes to*** *three daily newspapers.*

from time to time occasionally

He calls me ***from time to time****.*

to be used to/to be accustomed to + **noun** to have adapted

He is dizzy because he ***is not used to*** *the altitude.*

She is nervous because ***she is not used*** *to driving in traffic.*

Phrasal Verbs

come to (intransitive) regain consciousness

She fainted a few minutes ago, but fortunately ***came to*** *right away.*

see to (nonseparable) take responsibility for a future action

You don't have to make reservations; we will ***see to*** *that.*

look forward to (nonseparable) await with pleasure

We are ***looking forward to*** *seeing you soon.*

PRACTICE

52-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.

1. After school, the kids went _____.

   to home   to the home   playground   home

2. How do the children get to _____?

   home   school   playground   house

3. The _____ to Los Angeles leaves at 4 P.M.

   road   highway   flight   bridge

4. She _____ her homework to the teacher.

   handed   threw   found   told

5. The music award went to the _____.

best builder	best pilot	best pianist	best brother

6. Bad drivers are a danger to the _____.

sky	neighborhood	driveway	supermarket

7. Don't worry. Soon you will _____ to your new environment.

adapt	consent	prefer	respond

8. Do you have an allergy to _____?

the weather	dust	homework	rain

9. The dog was _____ to its owner.

happy	hospitable	obedient	sick

10. It's 10:45. It's _____ to eleven.

10 minutes	45 minutes	a quarter	half

11. My friends and I belong to the _____.

bookshelf	book club	readers	hospital

12. How many miles to a _____ do you get on the highway?

city	speedometer	gallon	quart

52-2. Use an expression with *to* to express the following:

1. He texts me occasionally.
2. Have you adapted to the climate here?

52-3. Use *to* in a phrasal verb to express the following:

1. She regained consciousness a few minutes ago.
2. I am awaiting your visit with pleasure.

UNIT 53:
Toward

Basic Meanings

1. Toward means **in the direction of a place.**

Pattern 1 **verb + *toward* + noun**

*She ran **toward** the playground to see her friends.*
*Let's head **toward** the park.*

Typical verbs:

blow, fly, go, head, hike, look, march, move, point, run, sail, turn, walk

Pattern 2 **verb + noun + *toward* + noun**

*He guided us **toward** the cave.*
*They directed the girls **toward** the path.*

Typical verbs:

direct, guide, lead, pull, push, shove, throw

2. Toward indicates **attitude** about something.

Pattern 1 ***be* + adjective + *toward* + noun**

*She **is** very affectionate **toward** her parents.*
*They **have been** cool **toward** his proposals.*

Typical adjectives:

affectionate, charitable, considerate, cool, friendly, gracious, hospitable, inhospitable, menacing, spiteful, warm

Pattern 2 **noun + *toward* + noun**

*His feelings **toward** her have not changed.*

Typical nouns before *toward*:

attitude, behavior, conduct, demeanor, feelings

3. **Toward** indicates the **direction of action.**

Pattern **verb + *toward* + noun**

*They are heading **toward** an agreement.*
*We worked **toward** a happy conclusion for everyone.*

Typical nouns after *toward*:

agreement, argument, conclusion, ending, goal, vote

Typical verbs:

head, lean, push, take steps, work

4. **Toward** indicates the object of a **contribution** or **partial payment.**

Pattern **verb + *toward* + noun**

*The money will go **toward** helping the family.*
*She contributes **toward** his monthly expenses.*

Typical verbs:

contribute, donate, give, go, help

PRACTICE

53-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.

1. We are taking _____ toward achieving our goals.

   pushes steps walks money

2. She _____ toward his monthly expenses.

   contributes donates goes steps

3. He is very _____ toward his guests.

   happy confusing feeling hospitable

4. They _____ us toward the camp.

   followed found directed threw

UNIT 54:
Towards

Basic Meanings

1. Towards means near a period of time.

Pattern 1 ***towards*** **+ noun**

I always feel hungry ***towards*** *dinnertime.*

Typical nouns used after *towards*:

dawn, dinnertime, dusk, evening, lunchtime, mid-afternoon, midnight, noon

Pattern 2 ***towards*** **+** ***the*** **+** ***end/middle*** **+** ***of*** **+** ***the*** **+ noun**

We start getting ready for school ***towards the end of the*** *summer.*

Typical nouns used with this pattern:

class, concert, course, day, fall, flight, game, month, party, period, season, semester, show, spring, summer, trip, vacation, week, winter, year

PRACTICE

54-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.

1. Everyone will be leaving towards _____.

   the game   midnight   month   year

2. We'll start practicing for the concert towards the beginning of _____.

   April   the game   midnight   month

UNIT 55:
Under

Basic Meanings

1. Under means **in a lower position** than something else.

Pattern 1 **verb + *under* + noun**

*We sat **under** the tree and had a picnic.*

Pattern 2 **verb + noun + *under* + noun**

*Let's put the desk **under** the window; then we'll have a great view.*

2. Under means **covered by something else; underneath.**

Pattern 1 **verb + *under* + noun**

*The children hid **under** the table, thinking we couldn't see them.*

Typical verbs before *under*:

be, hide, lie, rest, sit, sleep, stand, wait, walk

Pattern 2 **verb + noun + *under* + noun**

*She stores all her boxes **under** the bed.*

Typical verbs:

bury, find, hide, place, push, put, store, wear

3. Under means **less than.**

Pattern ***under* + noun**

*I'm sure she was driving **under** the speed limit.*

*He has three children **under** age ten.*

Nouns commonly used after *under*:

age, any number, average, height, limit, maximum, minimum, norm, weight

Expression

to be under age to not be old enough to do something

She can't vote because she ***is under age.***

4. **Under** can indicate **control.**

Pattern 1 ***under*** **+ noun**

Under *this boss we have little freedom to express our own ideas.*

You have a lot more benefits ***under*** *the new insurance policy.*

Typical nouns used after *under*:

boss, coach, contract, dictator, doctor, general, king, mayor, policy, president, principal, professor, supervisor, teacher

Pattern 2 ***under*** **+** ***the*** **+ noun +** ***of*** **+ noun**

She is ***under the*** *care* ***of*** *a doctor.*

Typical nouns after *under the*:

administration, care, control, dictatorship, direction, eye, management, presidency

Pattern 3 ***under*** **+ ø + noun**

The children are ***under*** *supervision at all times.*

They were arrested ***under*** *orders of the chief.*

Typical nouns:

control, orders, supervision, surveillance

5. **Under** can indicate a **current situation or state:**

Pattern 1 ***be*** **+** ***under*** **+ ø noun**

Those two thugs ***are under*** *investigation by the police.*

That problem ***is*** *still* ***under*** *discussion by the board.*

Typical nouns used after *under*:

consideration, construction, discussion, investigation, suspicion

Pattern 2 ***be*** **+** ***under*** **+ noun**

They are ***under*** *the influence of their new friends.*

Typical nouns used after *under*:

circumstances, conditions, impression, influence

6. **Under** can identify the **category of a noun** in written reference material.

Pattern ***look up/find*** **+ noun +** ***under*** **+ name of category**

You can ***find*** *my name* ***under*** *"Y" in the directory.*
I ***looked up*** *butterflies* ***under*** *"Insects" in my encyclopedia.*

PRACTICE

55-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.

1. She hides the children's _____ under the bed.

socks	sweaters	food	gifts

2. They have three young children. They are all under _____.

seven	twenty	twenty-five	fifteen

3. A lot of _____ were changed under his presidency.

people	computers	laws	gifts

4. I am under the _____ that you are unhappy.

impression	influence	condition	investigation

5. To find information about Toronto, look under _____.

The United States	Mexico	The United Kingdom	Canada

UNIT 56:
Underneath

Basic Meanings

1. Underneath means **in a lower position** than something else.

*The sheets are **underneath** the blankets on the shelf.*

2. Underneath means **covered by.**

*I found my jacket **underneath** the other coats.*

3. Underneath indicates **concealed feelings.**

***Underneath** her smile there is a lot of heartache.*
*He is really very kind **underneath** his stern appearance.*

PRACTICE

56-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.

1. The clown has a big smile on his face, but underneath he is _____.
   sad   happy   laughing   silly
2. She wore _____ underneath her clothes because it was so cold.
   a slip   a coat   thermal underwear   a blanket

UNIT 57:
Until

Basic Meaning

1. Until indicates the **time of change** of an activity or situation.

Pattern 1 **verb + *until* + time**

*They waited **until** six o'clock.*
*The boys studied **until** midnight.*

Pattern 2 **verb + *until* + beginning of event**

*They lived here **until** their wedding; then they left.*
*She was busy **until** her graduation.*
*They didn't watch the game **until** halftime.*

PRACTICE

57-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.

1. Please be here by noon. I will wait for you until _____.

   6 P.M. 1 A.M. 12 P.M. 12 A.M.

2. You will have to study this information until you _____ it.

   learn forget write begin

UNIT 58:
Up

Basic Meanings

1. Up indicates **movement to a higher place.**

Pattern 1 **verb + *up* + noun**

*The cat climbed **up** the tree.*
*She always walks **up** the steps to the fifth floor.*

Typical verbs used before *up*:

climb, creep, go, jump, move, pop, race, run, walk

Pattern 2 **verb + noun + *up* + noun**

*Bring the box **up** the steps.*

Typical verbs used with this pattern:

bring, carry, drag, heave, move, send, take

2. Up (adverb) indicates **location at a high place.**

Pattern ***be* + *up***

*The balloon **is up**.*

3. Up indicates **location further along** the way.

Pattern **verb + *up* + noun**

*Their farm is three miles **up** the road.*
*She lives two blocks **up** the street.*

4. Up indicates **movement along a way.**

Pattern 1 **verb + *up* + noun**

*She is going to travel **up** Route 66.*

Nouns commonly used after *up*:

highway, path, road, street, turnpike, way

Pattern 2 **verb + noun + *up* + noun**

*We will drive four more miles **up** the highway.*

5. Up indicates movement against a current of water.

Pattern **verb + *up* + noun**

*They swam **up** the river for exercise.*

Typical verbs used before *up*:

cruise, drive, go, row, sail, swim

6. Up indicates a desired result.

Pattern **verb + *up* + noun**

*They are trying to drum **up** support.*

Typical verbs:

drum, round, scrape, work

Related Expression

to get up (enough) energy to try to force oneself to act

*She was exhausted, but she **got up enough energy** to cook dinner for her family.*

7. Up indicates creativity.

Pattern **verb + *up* + noun**

*We dreamed **up** a wonderful idea.*

Typical verbs used before *up*:

draw, dream, make, think

8. Up can indicate division into pieces.

Pattern **verb + *up* + noun**

*She chopped **up** the onions and peppers.*

*They divided **up** all the money.*

Typical verbs:

blow, break, chop, cut, divide, tear

Expressions

be up be awake

*I **am up** every day by eight o'clock.*

be up to date have current knowledge or records

*The governor **is up to date** on all the important issues.*

*It's important to keep the files **up to date**.*

be up to someone be the responsibility of someone to decide

*I don't care what movie we see; **it's up to** you.*

be up in arms (about) protest in anger

*The employees **are up in arms** over the decrease in benefits.*

be up to one's ears be extremely busy

*Her brother **is up to his ears** in work.*

be up a creek be in a difficult situation

*My partner left with all my money and now **I'm up a creek**.*

count up to to count as far as a number

*The baby **can count up to** ten already.*

make up one's mind decide

***Make up your mind** between the red dress and the black one.*

up and down the room constant movement from one side of the room to the other

*He was so nervous that he walked **up and down the room** all night.*

Phrasal Verbs

act up (intransitive) misbehave (**act out** is now commonly used with this meaning)

*The children always **act up** just before the school holidays begin.*

add up (intransitive) make sense

*She claims to have lots of friends, yet she is always alone; it doesn't **add up**.*

amp up (separable) increase in force

*The new government **amped up** investigations of private citizens.*

back up (intransitive) reverse

*The hardest part about driving a car is **backing up**.*

blow up (intransitive) get angry

*The girl's father **blew up** when she got home so late.*

blow up (separable) make bigger

*These photographs are too small; we should **blow** them **up**.*

bone up on (nonseparable) do an intensive study or review of

*He wanted to **bone up on** European history before he went on the tour.*

boot up (separable) start a computer

*We shut the computer down and then **booted** it **up** again.*

break up (separable) end

*The neighbors didn't like our noisy party and told us to **break** it **up**.*

break up (with) (intransitive) end a relationship

*It's always sad when a family **breaks up**.*

*The girl cried when she **broke up with** her boyfriend.*

bring up (separable) raise

*She **brought** the children **up** by herself.*

bring up (separable) mention a new topic

*At the meeting, the lady **brought up** the parking problem in our neighborhood.*

brush up (on) (nonseparable) practice to relearn old skills

*He wants to **brush up on** his Spanish before he goes to Mexico.*

burn up (separable) be destroyed by fire (something small)

*All of her papers and books **burned up** in the fire.*

burn up (separable) make angry

*Those silly gossips really **burn** me **up**.*

call up (separable) contact someone by telephone

*He comes home from school and **calls** all his friends **up**.*

catch up on (nonseparable) get back to a normal situation

*After staying up late every night, I need to **catch up on** sleep.*

catch up (with) (intransitive) reach the place or level of another person or people

*He has been sick and needs some time to **catch up**.*

*It will be hard for him to **catch up with** the other students.*

cheer up (intransitive) be happier

*She needs to **cheer up**.*

cheer up (separable) make someone happier

*She needs someone to **cheer** her **up**.*

clean up (intransitive) clean thoroughly

*They promised to **clean up** after the party.*

clean up (separable) clean thoroughly

*They promised to **clean** the house **up** after the party.*

close up (intransitive) close for business

*The shops **close up** in the afternoon, and reopen in the evening.*

close up (separable) stop operating a business

*They **closed** the shop **up** last year.*

come up to approach

*They **came up to** us and asked for help.*

cover up (separable) hide the facts

*They committed a crime and then **covered** it **up**.*

dress up put on more formal clothes than usual

*She always **dresses up** for parties.*

face up to (nonseparable) confront

*She had to stop dreaming and **face up to** the truth.*

feel up to (nonseparable) feel good enough for an activity

*He is a lot better, but he still doesn't **feel up to** going to work.*

fill up (separable) put in all that the container will hold

*If you use my car, please **fill** it **up** with gas.*

get up (intransitive) rise

*She **gets up** at six o'clock every morning.*

get up (separable) lift or remove something with some difficulty

*Will you help me **get** these boxes **up** the steps?*

give up (intransitive) surrender

*We won the game because the other team **gave up** and went home.*

give up (separable) stop using something

*He tried to stop smoking cigarettes, but found it hard to **give** them **up**.*

give up (on) (intransitive) stop trying

*She tried to convince her daughter to go back to school, but she finally **gave up**.*

*She finally **gave up on** her daughter.*

grow up (intransitive) become an adult

*Her son wants to be a doctor when he **grows up**.*

hang up (intransitive) put the phone down to end a telephone call

*You have called the wrong number; **hang up** and try again.*

hang up (separable) put clothing on a hook or hanger

*After you wash this dress, you should **hang** it **up**.*

hang up on (nonseparable) rudely end a telephone call during a conversation

*When she refused his invitation, he got angry and **hung up on** her.*

hold up (intransitive) continue in good condition

*The bike is in good shape now, but I don't know how long it will **hold up**.*

hold up (separable) delay

*The traffic on the bridge **held** us **up** for two hours.*

hurry up (intransitive) go faster

*Please **hurry up**! We're late.*

hype up (separable) advertise excessively

*They **hyped up** that actress, but she's not really very good.*

keep up (intransitive) stay at the level of the others

*The other hikers walked faster, and we couldn't **keep up**.*

keep up (separable) continue

*You are doing a great job. **Keep** it **up**!*

keep up with (nonseparable) go as fast as

*Please don't walk so fast; I can't **keep up with** you.*

line up (intransitive) form a line for service in order

*We always **line up** to buy tickets.*

line up (separable) make an arrangement with someone

*We **lined up** a great band for our dance.*

listen up (intransitive) pay attention

*The coach told the boys to **listen up**.*

look up (separable) search in a guide or directory

*If you want her phone number, **look** it **up** in the directory.*

look up to (nonseparable) respect

*Everybody in the department **looks up to** the director; she is wonderful.*

make up (separable) do missed work at a later time

*She missed the test, but the teacher said she could **make** it **up** next week.*

make up to (separable) do a favor to pay for a damage

*She hurt his feelings, then **made** it **up to** him by inviting him to her party.*

make up (with) (intransitive) become friends again after an argument

*They had a big fight, but they **made up** last night.*

*They **made up with** each other at the party.*

mark up (separable) increase the price

*Those shoes were cheaper last year; they have **marked** them **up**.*

mix up (separable) confuse

*The sisters look so much alike; I **mix** them **up** all the time.*

mix up (with) (separable) put with other things

*She put the ingredients in a bowl and **mixed** them all **up**.*

*They **mixed** the eggs **up** with the butter and sugar.*

pass up (separable) miss an opportunity

*She had a chance to continue her studies, but she **passed** it **up** to get married.*

pick up (intransitive) increase in momentum or pace

*Business is very slow this season; we hope it will **pick up** soon.*

pick up (separable) lift

*When I dropped my bracelet on the sidewalk, he **picked** it **up** and handed it to me.*

run up (separable) increase charges through excessive use

*He made a lot of long-distance calls and **ran up** my phone bill.*

set up (separable) arrange

*We **set** the appointment **up** for November.*

set up (separable) cause an innocent person to be blamed for something

*He is not guilty of the theft; the hoodlums **set** him **up**.*

set up (separable) establish in a career or business

*His uncle **set** him **up** in the family trade.*

show up (intransitive) appear

*We will leave early if everyone **shows up** on time.*

show up (separable) appear to be better than someone else

*They practiced the dance steps at home and **showed** everybody else **up** at the party.*

sign up register

*We are **signing up** for your course.*

sign up (separable) arrange an activity for someone

*They **signed** us **up** to work on Thursday night.*

slip up (intransitive) make a mistake

*We intended to send the package last week, but our workers **slipped up**.*

stand up (intransitive) move to one's feet; be on one's feet

*When the president entered the room, everyone **stood up**.*

*When you teach school, you have to **stand up** all day.*

stand up (separable) miss a commitment without explaining

*He went to pick her up but she wasn't there; she had **stood** him **up**.*

step up (separable) increase the speed

***Step** it **up** a little; we need to go faster.*

take up (separable) pursue a new interest

*She **took up** knitting when she was pregnant.*

take up (separable) to shorten

*The pants are too long; we will have to **take** them **up**.*

tear up (separable) rip into small pieces

*The letter made her so angry that she **tore** it **up**.*

throw up (intransitive) vomit

*The poor child got sick and **threw up**.*

turn up (intransitive) appear

*She is very unreliable; we never know if she will **turn up**.*

turn up (separable) increase in volume or speed

***Turn** the radio **up**; this is a great song.*

wake up (intransitive) open one's eyes after sleeping

*What time do you usually **wake up**?*

wake up (separable) cause someone to stop sleeping

*Please **wake** me **up** in the morning.*

wrap up (separable) finish a session

*We've been practicing for three hours; let's **wrap** it **up**.*

write up (separable) explain in writing

*His ideas were good, and they asked him to **write** them **up**.*

PRACTICE

58-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.

1. The frog _____ up onto the rock.
   ran walked hopped raced
2. Jack and Jill ran up the _____.
   house well back yard hill
3. We aren't there yet. We have to go two more blocks up the _____.
   street steps farm stairs
4. We are trying to _____ up a little money.
   think hope scrape work
5. The children made up a delightful _____.
   fort playground swings game
6. She tore the letter up into little _____.
   pictures pieces papers words

58-2. Use an expression with *up* to express the following:

1. She kept walking from one side of the room to the other.
2. I hope you decide soon.
3. It's your decision.
4. The workers are protesting in anger.
5. I can't go because I have a lot of work to do.

58-3. Use *up* in a phrasal verb to express the following:

1. My mom got really angry when she found out.

2. Please don’t talk about that topic at the meeting.
3. He will need to do extra work in order to reach the level of the other students.
4. I hope this news will make you happier.
5. Please move faster!
6. Don’t stop doing such a great job!
7. She can’t walk as fast as you do.
8. I hope she doesn’t refuse this opportunity.
9. She explained her ideas in writing.

UNIT 59:
With

Basic Meanings

1. With means **in the company of.**

Pattern 1 **verb + *with* + noun**

*She is **with** her sister.*

*I danced **with** him.*

Typical verbs used before *with*:

be, chat, converse, dance, drink, eat, go, leave, live, play, stay, study, talk, travel, walk, work

Pattern 2 **verb + noun + *with* + noun**

*She spent the weekend **with** us.*

Typical verbs used with this pattern:

dance, drink, eat, leave, play, spend, study

Related Expressions

to be tied up with to be occupied with at the moment

*He can't come to the phone; he **is tied up with** a client.*

to be in a discussion with to be talking seriously to

*The boss **is in a discussion with** the manager right now.*

2. With means **in the same place as.**

Pattern 1 ***be* + *with* + noun**

*My hat **is with** my scarf.*

Pattern 2 **verb + noun + *with* + noun**

*Put your coat **with** mine.*

*She left her children **with** the babysitter.*

Typical verbs:

keep, leave, put, store

3. **With** can mean **added together.**

Pattern **noun + *with* + noun**

*She always drinks her coffee **with** sugar.*

*The hotel **with** meals will cost two hundred dollars a day.*

4. **With** can describe something by indicating what it **has.**

Pattern 1 **noun + *with* + noun**

*Did you see a woman **with** a baby a few minutes ago?*

*I have an article **with** pictures for my presentation.*

Pattern 2 ***be* + past participle + *with* + noun**

*You will **be** provided **with** two sets of keys.*

Past participles used with this pattern:

caught, discovered, found, furnished, provided, seen

Related Expression

to be blessed with to be lucky to have

*He **is blessed with** good health and good looks.*

5. **With** can describe a **manner of behavior.**

Pattern 1 **verb + *with* + noun**

*Please handle the piano **with** care.*

*They accepted the proposal **with** enthusiasm.*

Typical nouns used after *with*:

anger, care, compassion, courage, delight, discretion, disdain, distress, enthusiasm, fear, feeling, glee, grace, gratitude, happiness, hatred, humility, indifference, joy, kindness, love, optimism, pleasure, pride, regard, sadness, shame, skill, sympathy, tenderness, thanks, understanding

Pattern 2 **verb + noun + *with* + noun**

She greeted us ***with*** *a big smile.*

He always starts work ***with*** *a grumble.*

Typical nouns used after *with*:

air, cry, expression, frown, greeting, grumble, grunt, handshake, hug, kiss, look, promise, question, shudder, sigh, smile, smirk, thank you, word

Pattern 3 ***be*** **+ adjective +** ***with*** **+ noun (thing)**

Please ***be*** *careful* ***with*** *the piano.*

I hope he ***is*** *successful* ***with*** *the mission.*

Typical adjectives:

awkward, careful, clumsy, creative, dexterous, quick, skillful, slow, successful, talented, unsuccessful

Pattern 4 ***be*** **+ adjective +** ***with*** **+ noun (person)**

She ***is*** *very patient* ***with*** *me.*

The boss ***has been*** *frank* ***with*** *her about her performance.*

Typical adjectives:

awkward, belligerent, curt, flexible, forthcoming, frank, friendly, generous, helpful, honest, impatient, open, patient, stiff, sympathetic, truthful

6. **With** can describe someone's **feelings about something.**

Pattern ***be*** **+ adjective +** ***with*** **+ noun**

The child ***was*** *bored* ***with*** *her toys.*

They ***are*** *very happy* ***with*** *their new home.*

Typical adjectives used with this pattern:

bored, comfortable, content, delighted, disappointed, frustrated, happy, impressed, pleased, satisfied, thrilled, uncomfortable, unhappy, upset

Related Expressions

to be in love with to have a romantic feeling toward

He ***is*** *(madly)* ***in love with*** *her.*

to be fed up with to have reached one's limit or patience toward

She is leaving her job because she ***is fed up with*** *the restrictions on her creativity.*

7. **With** can indicate **a working relationship.**

Pattern 1 ***be*** **+** ***with*** **+ noun**

She ***is with*** *a real estate company.*

Pattern 2 ***be*** **+ past participle +** ***with*** **+ noun**

He ***is*** *involved* ***with*** *that organization.*

They ***are*** *not concerned* ***with*** *our group.*

Pattern 3 ***work*** **+** ***with*** **+ noun**

His mother ***works with*** *us.*

8. **With** can indicate the **instrument or tool used** for an action.

Pattern 1 **verb +** ***with*** **+ noun**

She writes ***with*** *a pen.*

Typical verbs used before *with*:

color, clean, cut, dig, draw, eat, paint, serve, sweep, wash, write

Pattern 2 **verb + noun +** ***with*** **+ noun**

The boy drew a flower ***with*** *his crayons.*

I swept the garage ***with*** *a big broom.*

Typical verbs:

attach, clean, clear, cut, dig, draw, dry, eat, erase, fasten, hit, move, nail, open, paint, plow, season, serve, sweep, wash, write

9. **With** can indicate a noun that **covers or fills an area.**

Pattern **verb + noun +** ***with*** **+ noun**

She filled the pitcher ***with*** *lemonade.*

They planted the bed ***with*** *white flowers.*

Typical verbs:

cover, cram, fill, frost, heap, ice, pack, paint, plant, smear, spread, sprinkle, stuff

10. **With** can indicate **struggle**

Pattern 1 **verb +** ***with*** **+ noun**

My colleague disagrees ***with*** *the management.*

He is always fighting ***with*** *his brother.*

Typical verbs:

argue, clash, compete, conflict, differ, disagree, fight, quarrel, wrestle

Related Expression

to have it out with to express anger verbally

After two years of frustration, he finally ***had it out with*** *his boss.*

Pattern 2 ***have*** **+** ***a*** **+ noun +** ***with***

She ***has an*** *argument* ***with*** *him every morning.*

They ***are having a*** *quarrel* ***with*** *the neighbors right now.*

Typical nouns:

argument, bout, contest, disagreement, fight, match, quarrel

Pattern 3 ***be*** **+** ***in*** **+ noun +** ***with***

She ***is in*** *competition* ***with*** *him for the promotion.*

It's too bad your ideas ***are in*** *conflict* ***with*** *those of the majority.*

11. **With** can indicate **support or cooperation.**

Pattern 1 **verb +** ***with*** **+ noun**

They are cooperating ***with*** *the authorities.*

You have to comply ***with*** *the rules.*

Typical verbs:

agree, collaborate, comply, concur, cooperate, empathize, harmonize, help, negotiate, sympathize, work

Related Expressions

to get along with to cooperate with

I ***get along with*** *my roommate, even though she is not my best friend.*

to be with to support

Don't be nervous when you are giving your speech; we ***are*** *all* ***with*** *you.*

Pattern 2 **verb +** ***a*** **+ noun +** ***with*** **+ noun**

She signed ***a*** *contract* ***with*** *us.*

Typical nouns:

agreement, business, contract, friendship, partnership, relationship

Expression

to do business with to have negotiations with

*We don't **do business with** them anymore.*

Pattern 3 ***be*** **+** ***in*** **+ noun +** ***with*** **+ noun**

***Are** you **in** agreement **with** the decisions they made?*

Typical nouns before *with*:

accord, agreement, cahoots, collaboration, compliance, concert, concurrence, cooperation, harmony, partnership, sympathy

12. With means at the same time as.

*He rises **with** the sun.*
*They opened the show **with** a song.*

Typical verbs:

begin, celebrate, close, dedicate, end, start

13. With means at the same rate as.

*Wine improves **with** age.*
*Wisdom comes **with** experience.*
***With** time, you will forget.*

14. With means in the same direction as.

Pattern **verb +** ***with*** **+** ***the*** **+ noun**

*It will take longer because we will be **with the** traffic.*
*They drifted down the river **with the** current.*

Typical verbs used before *with*:

be, cruise, drift, drive, float, go, ride, sail

Typical nouns used after *with the*:

current, flow, tide, traffic, wind

15. **With** can indicate **separation.**

Pattern **verb expression + *with* + noun**

*I hate to part **with** my old books.*

*Our company severed relations **with** that client years ago.*

*He is through **with** her; he doesn't want to see her again.*

Typical verb expressions used before *with*:

be finished, be through, break up, cut ties, fall out, part, part company, sever relations, split up

16. **With** is used in a **comparison** or **contrast.**

Pattern 1 **noun + verb + *with* + noun**

*Your blouse clashes **with** your skirt.*

Verbs commonly used with this pattern:

clash, compare, contrast, go, look good

Pattern 2 ***compare/contrast* + noun + *with* + noun**

*Let's compare this computer **with** that one.*

17. **With** can indicate **equality.**

Pattern ***be* + adjective + *with* + noun**

*This side **is** not even **with** that side.*

*Our **team** is tied **with** theirs: the score is two to two.*

Typical adjectives used before *with*:

comparable, even, level, on a par, parallel, tied

18. **With** can indicate the **cause of a condition.**

Pattern 1 **adjective + *with* + noun**

*The branches of the trees were heavy **with** snow.*

*The girl's face is wet **with** tears.*

Pattern 2 **verb in gerund form + *with* + noun**

*The newlyweds were beaming **with** happiness.*

Typical verbs used before *with*:

aching, beaming, crying, dancing, fuming, screaming, shouting, smiling, trembling

Typical nouns used after *with*:

anger, fear, glee, happiness, joy, mirth, rage, shame, zeal

Pattern 3 ***with*** **+** ***the*** **+ noun**

__With the__ traffic in this city, it takes a long time to get to work.

Their lifestyle changed completely __with the__ birth of their first baby.

Typical nouns used after *with the*:

arrival, bills, birth, change, crime, death, decrease, departure, guests, increase, move, problems, rain, traffic, trouble, worries

Pattern 4 ***with*** **+** ***(all)*** **+ possessive noun or pronoun + noun**

__With all__ his talent, he should be famous.

She is quite popular, __with all__ her beauty and charm.

Typical nouns after *with*:

beauty, charm, education, influence, intelligence, money, power, talent

19. With can mean despite.

Pattern ***with*** **+** ***(all)*** **+ possessive noun or pronoun + noun**

I love him __with all__ his faults.

__With all__ her problems, she is quite serene.

Expressions

to be with someone to follow or understand

Please repeat that; __I'm not with__ you.

to be charged with something to be formally accused of a crime

The boy __was charged with__ breaking and entering.

Down with something a rallying call to eliminate oppressors

__Down with__ the tyrants!

Off with someone a call for someone to leave

__Off with__ you, and don't come back!

Phrasal Verbs

(get) on with (nonseparable) to start something right away

*Let's **get on with** this job; I want to go home early.*

***On with** the show!*

get away with escape a misdeed without penalty

*He tore up his parking fine and **got away with** it.*

put up with tolerate

*The house is beautiful, but I can't **put up with** the noise of the airplanes.*

PRACTICE

59-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.

1. I hope you will _____ with me at the party.

   fight   discuss   dance   look

2. The hotel room is _____ with a double bed.

   built   furnished   seen   discovered

3. The carpenter showed us his work with _____.

   pride   promise   health   saw

4. They need something new to play with. They are bored with their _____.

   days   nights   toys   food

5. Our congressman is not concerned with our _____.

   offers   problems   money   voting

6. She has a new job. She is now with _____.

   a new car   a new husband   a new company   a new hairstyle

7. They get along well. They work in _____ with each other.

   singing   band   chorus   harmony

8. She _____ with him because he was lazy.

   sailed   drove   got tired   broke up

9. He was _____ with anger.

   dancing   beaming   shouting   smiling

10. Does this dress look good with _____?

these shoes	these bags	these combs	these brushes

59-2. Use an expression with *with* to express the following:

1. They were accused of starting the fire.
2. Remove the dictator!
3. She never argues with her roommate.

59-3. Use *with* in a phrasal verb to express the following:

1. I can’t tolerate his attitude.
2. I don’t know how he escapes punishment for his crimes.
3. I’m getting impatient. Let’s begin!

UNIT 60:
Within

Basic Meanings

1. **Within** means **not outside a place.**

Pattern ***be*** **+** ***within*** **+ noun**

Those schools ***are within*** *the county jurisdiction.*
There is too much commotion ***within the*** *building.*

Typical nouns used after *within*:

area, building, city, country, county, jurisdiction, state, territory, walls

2. **Within** means **less than a period of time.**

I will return ***within*** *the hour.*
He will finish ***within*** *five minutes.*

3. **Within** means **less than a distance.**

There is a hospital ***within*** *five miles of the school.*
The storm was ***within*** *ten miles of our town.*

4. **Within** means **possible; not exceeding the limits of something.**

Pattern ***be*** **+** ***within*** **+ (one's) noun**

At last, the beach ***is within*** *sight!*
A fortune ***is within*** *our reach if we are lucky.*

Typical nouns used after *within*:

bounds, hearing, range, reach, sight, the law, the limit, the rules

Expression

to keep within the family to not reveal something to anyone who is not a family member

That man has a strange history, but they ***keep it within the family****.*

PRACTICE

60-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.

1. There is some crime within this _____.

   neighborhood teacher garage playground

2. We will be back momentarily. We will be back within _____.

   ten hours ten years ten minutes a year

3. We are almost at the beach. The water is within _____.

   the ocean the river noise sight

UNIT 61:
Without

Basic Meanings

1. Without indicates the **absence of somebody.**

*I can't live **without** you.*
*Please don't leave **without** me.*

2. Without means **not having.**

Pattern **verb + *without* + *(any)* noun**
*That young mother manages **without any** help.*
*We are **without** money this month.*

3. Without means **not using.**

Pattern **verb + noun + *without* + noun**
*We did the crossword puzzle **without** a dictionary.*
*She can't read **without** her glasses.*

4. Without means **not performing an action.**

Pattern ***without* + verb in gerund form**
*She passed the test **without** studying.*
*He left **without** saying good-bye.*

Expressions

without a doubt certainly
*She is **without a doubt** the best chairperson we have ever had.*

without fail a demand or promise to do something

Be here at six A.M. ***without fail****.*

I will finish within three days ***without fail****.*

without ceremony immediately and quietly

He took charge ***without ceremony*** *and began to work.*

that goes without saying that is understood to be true

You will be paid well for your work; ***that goes without saying****.*

PRACTICE

61-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.

1. She's freezing. She left school without _____.

   teacher hat her coat homework

2. She can now ride her bicycle without _____.

   handlebars horn training wheels spokes

3. They left the restaurant without _____.

   food coat noise paying

61-2. Use an expression with *without* to express the following:

1. She was certainly my best teacher.
2. We promise to finish the job tomorrow.
3. That is understood to be true.
4. The new boss quietly began to work.

PART TWO

Prepositions by Function

How to Use Part Two

Part Two is the most important section of this book for learning the most basic everyday usage of prepositions. The expressions and formulas described here indicate specific facts and must be used correctly. Incorrect usage could cause great misunderstanding!

1. Begin with Unit 1.

2. Read each example quietly, and make sure you understand its meaning. If you are not sure, ask for help from your teacher, a classmate, or someone who speaks both English and your native language.

3. Read each example aloud. Do this several times, until it sounds and feels natural. If possible, ask a native speaker of English to read each example out loud for you. Then ask that person to listen to your pronunciation and tell you if it is acceptable.

4. Think of a new example sentence for each category, and write it down.

5. When you feel confident that you have memorized each item, do the exercises at the end of the chapter. Write your answers to the exercises in your notebook —not in the book! (This way, you can go back and test yourself often.)

6. Compare your answers with the Answer Key on p. 303. If all of your answers are correct—that is wonderful! If you have any incorrect answers, read the explanation again. Write down the correct answers in complete sentences.

7. When you feel ready, do the entire exercise page again.

8. Continue to do this until you have completed the exercises with no errors.

9. Practice the items you have learned as often as possible.

10. Now begin Unit 2, in the same way as Unit 1. Then continue until you have completed all of Part Two.

11. Test yourself often to make sure you have memorized all the expressions. You will be able to use them in conversation with confidence.

UNIT 1:
Time

BEFORE

—previous to a time

Ten o'clock is before eleven o'clock.

AFTER

—subsequent to a time

Three o'clock is after two o'clock.

DURING

—for part of a period

He slept during the day. (He slept from 2 P.M. until 4 P.M.)

—at the same time as another event

She slept during the football game.

THROUGH, THROUGHOUT

—for an entire period, and after

He slept through the day. (He slept from 9 A.M. until 9 P.M.)

He slept throughout the day.

AT AROUND, AT ABOUT

—at an approximate time

We will leave at around six.

We will get there at about seven.

BY

—no later than a time

We have to be there by seven-fifteen.

by the time—when

By the time you get here, we will have left.

TO, OF

—minutes before the hour

It's ten to four.

It's ten of four.

TOWARDS

—nearing a period of time

It was towards evening when she called.

BETWEEN

—after a time, and before another time

They will arrive between five and six.

WITHIN

—between now and a length of time

They will be here within ten minutes.

BEYOND, PAST

UNTIL

—after a time

Our guests stayed beyond midnight.

Our guests stayed past midnight.

—up to, but not after a time

The party will last until ten.

FOR

—during a length of time

They have been here for a week.

SINCE

—between a past time and now

They have been here since last Thursday.

IN

in time—not too late for an event

Try to get here in time to help me.

—a century, decade, year, season, month

He lived in the sixteenth century.

That singer was popular in the eighties.

We came here in the fall.

We came here in October.

We came here in 1997.

—after a length of time

She will be here in two weeks. **in the morning, afternoon, evening**

They work in the morning.

He comes home in the afternoon.

We are going to go out in the evening.

ON

on time—at the required time

He is punctual; he always arrives on time.

on the dot—at the exact minute

Be here at ten o'clock on the dot.

—a day, days, a date, dates

She is coming on Monday.

She doesn't work on Tuesdays.

I heard that singer on my birthday.

We came here on October sixth.

We came here on October 6, 1997.

AT

at night

He works at night.

—a specific time

He comes home at ten o'clock.

at present—now

We are studying at present.

at the moment—now

I am not working at the moment.

WITH

—at the same time as

She wakes up with the sun.

OUT OF	**AHEAD OF**
to be out of time—to have no time left ***We didn't finish, and now we are out of time.*** **to run out of time**—use up remaining time. ***We didn't eat because we ran out of time.***	**to be ahead of time**—to be early ***I'm glad you got here ahead of time; you can help me get ready for the party.***

UP	
time is up—there is no official time remaining for a specific activity. ***I sat down when the bell rang because my time was up.***	

PRACTICE

1-1. Write the correct preposition in each blank:

1. Their daughter was born _____ 1998
   _____ October
   _____ the 18th
   _____ four-thirty
   _____ the afternoon.
2. I haven't seen my friend __________ August.
3. He was here _____ two weeks.
4. The play starts _____ seven o'clock _____ the dot, so be sure to be here _____ six-fifty.
5. Her mother is going to be here _____ the tenth _____ July. She will be here _____ two weeks.
6. Our neighbors always have a party _____ New Year's Eve. It usually starts __________ ten o'clock and lasts _____ the next morning.
7. Some people never go out _____ night because they get up so early _____ the morning.
8. Four o'clock is __________ five o'clock.

9. The baby didn't sleep __________ the night because he was so hungry.

10. I heard a noise __________ the night, but I was too sleepy to get up.

11. _____ the moment we are trying to study.

12. Some of us couldn't finish the test because the time was _____.

UNIT 2:

Location

IN	ON	AT
—a continent, a country, a state, a city, a town	—a street, a floor ***She lives on Oak Street.***	—a building, a house or apartment number
She lives in California.	***She lives on the fourth floor.***	***She lives at The Manor.***
She lives in San Francisco.		***She lives at 1260 Oak Street.***
		at home—in one's own house **at work**—at one's job **at school**—attending school **at church**—attending church services
—a room, an area of a room	—an outside area	—a work area inside
She is in the kitchen, in the corner.	***He is standing on the corner.***	***She is at the kitchen sink.***
Our theater seats are in the balcony.	***He has an outdoor grill on the balcony.***	
—a comfortable chair	—a straight chair, a sofa, a couch	
He sat in the chair and watched television.	***He sat on the chair and ate his dinner.*** ***We sat on the sofa and watched television.***	
in bed—under the	**on the bed**—on top of	

covers	the covers	
—the water, the air, the environment	—facing a coast, a beach	—the coast, the beach
	The house is on the beach.	***The whole family is at the beach.***
They are swimming in the water. ***There is pollution in the air.***		
—the center, the middle	—the side, left, right, surface	—the beginning, start, end
Our house is in the center of town.	***Our house is on the left side of the street.***	***Our house is at the end of the street.***
—the north/south/east/west	—the north side/south side/east side/west side	
New England is in the north of the United States.	***Our house is on the south side of town.***	
—a bodily attack	—the surface of the body	
The stone hit me in the face.	***He has a scratch on his arm.***	
—a vehicle one cannot walk around in (car/small boat/small plane/helicopter)	—a vehicle one can walk around on (bus/train/large boat/airplane)	
Please ride in the car with us.	***Please ride on the bus with us.***	
	—an individual vehicle (horse, bicycle, motorcycle, skates)	
	He came over on his bike.	

ABOUT, AROUND, ACROSS

THROUGHOUT

—in all areas of a place

The clothes were thrown about the room.

The papers were lying around the house.

There was trash throughout the house.

—in all areas of a flat surface

The toys were scattered across the floor.

WITH

—in the same place as someone or something else

The baby is with the nurse.

I'm going to put my bag with yours on the chair.

OVER, ABOVE

BELOW, BENEATH, UNDER, UNDERNEATH

The white box is **over** the black box.

The white box is **above** the black box.

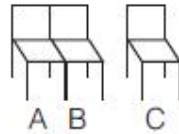
The black box is **below** the white box.

The black box is **beneath** the white box.

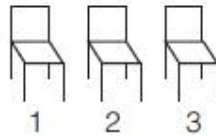
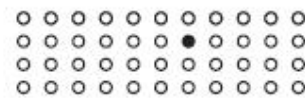
The black box is **under** the white box.

The black box is **underneath** the white box.

AGAINST

BY, BESIDE, NEXT TO

Chair A is **against** Chair B.

Chair B is **by** Chair C.
Chair B is **beside** Chair C.
Chair B is **next to** Chair C.

BETWEEN

Chair 2 is **between** Chair 1 and Chair 3.

AMONG

The black spot is **among** the white spots.

ON, ON TOP OF, UPON

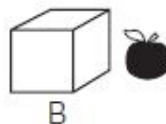
The white lamp is **on** the table.
The white lamp is **on top of** the table.
The white lamp is **upon** the table.

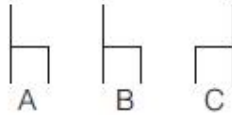
OFF

The black lamp is **off** the table.

IN, INSIDE, WITHIN

OUT OF, OUTSIDE OF

Apple A is **in** the box.
Apple A is **inside** the box.
Apple A is **within** the box.

Apple B is **out of** the box.
Apple B is **outside of** the box.

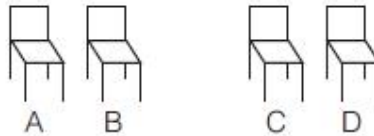
ACROSS FROM, OPPOSITE

Chair C is **across from** Chair B.
Chair C is **opposite** Chair B.

IN FRONT OF, AHEAD OF

Chair B is **in front of** Chair A.
Chair B is **ahead of** Chair A.

IN BACK OF, BEHIND

Chair A is **in back of** Chair B.
Chair A is **behind** Chair B.

NEAR, CLOSE TO

Chair A is **near** Chair B.
Chair A is **close to** Chair B.

FAR FROM

Chair C is **far from** Chair B.

BEYOND

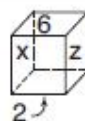
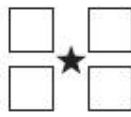
Chair D is **beyond** Chair C.

AT THE TOP OF

The X is **at the top of** the box.

AT THE BOTTOM OF

The Z is **at the bottom of** the box.

ON THE TOP OF

The number 6 is **on the top of** the box.

ON THE BOTTOM OF

The number 2 is **on the bottom of** the box.

ON THE SIDE OF

The X and the Z are **on the sides of** the box.

PRACTICE

2-1. Write in the correct prepositions:

A. Where is the star?

1. ___________ the box
2. ___________ the box
3. ___________ the box
4. ___________ the box
5. ___________ the box
6. ___________ the box
7. ___________ the box
8. ___________ the box
9. ___________ the box
10. ___________ the box
11. ___________ the boxes
12. ___________ the boxes

B. Her apartment is ______ Florida,
______ Miami,
______ The Palms
______ Ocean Drive
______ number 407.

She lives ______ the fourth floor
______ a very nice apartment.

She is often ______ school
or ______ work.

When she is ______ home, she is usually
asleep ______ bed.

However, right now she is
______ the kitchen,
______ the stove, cooking.

Soon she will sit down
______ a dining room chair
______ the table
______ the corner, to eat her dinner.

She will probably be out
______ the balcony after dinner,
sitting ______ a comfortable chair and relaxing.

UNIT 3:
Direction

ACROSS

The line goes **across** the box.

IN, INTO

The line goes **in** the box.
The line goes **into** the box.

ALONG, BY

The line goes **along** the box.
The line goes **by** the box.

OUT OF

The line goes **out of** the box.

PAST

The line goes **past** the box.

ONTO

The line goes **onto** the table.

THROUGH

The line goes **through** the box.

OFF

The line goes **off** the table.

AROUND

The line goes **around** the box.

OVER

The line goes **over** the hill.

TO, TOWARD

The solid line goes **to** the box.
The dotted line goes **toward** the box.

DOWN

The line goes **down** the hill.

UP

The line goes **up** the hill.

FROM, AWAY FROM

The line goes **from** the box.
The line goes **away from** the box.

WITH

The boat sails **with** the wind.

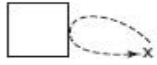
BACK TO

The line goes **back to** the box.

FOR

Spain
U.S.A.

The plane is leaving **for** Spain.

BACK FROM

The dotted line comes **back from** the box.

PRACTICE

3-1. Where is the dotted line going?

1. ____________the box
2. ____________the box
3. ____________the box
4. ____________the box
5. ____________the box
6. ____________the box
7. ____________the box
8. ____________the box
9. ____________the box
10. ____________the box
11. ____________the box
12. ____________the box
13. ____________the box
14. ____________the table
15. ____________the table

UNIT 4:
Number

About, around, above, over, under, and between are adverbs when used before numbers.

ABOUT, AROUND	
—approximately	
There were about two hundred people there.	
There were around two hundred people there.	

ABOVE, OVER	
—more than	
She has over a hundred books on that subject.	
She has above a hundred books on that subject.	

UNDER	
—less than	**$895**
The car costs under a thousand dollars.	

BETWEEN	
—higher than one number and lower than another	**$21.50**
The tickets will cost between twenty and twenty-five dollars.	

PLUS	
—indicates addition	**5 + 6 = 11**
Five plus six equals eleven.	

FROM	
—indicates subtraction	**10 - 3 = 7**

Three from ten equals seven.

BY

—indicates multiplication **3 × 4 = 12**

Three multiplied by four equals twelve.

INTO

—indicates division $\begin{array}{r}4\\3\overline{)12}\end{array}$

Three into twelve equals four.

OF

—indicates a fraction

One-half of twelve is six. **1/2 × 12 = 6**

One-third of nine is three. **1/3 × 9 = 3**

Three-quarters of twelve is nine. **3/4 × 12 = 9**

indicates all, part, or none of a specific plural or noncount noun, following **all, many, much, a lot, lots, plenty, enough, several, some, a few, a little, a bit, none**

All of the books on the table are yours.

Some of the money went to charity.

None of the furniture is valuable.

PRACTICE

4-1. Fill in each blank with the appropriate word:

1. He has (approximately) ______________________ five hundred dollars in cash.
2. There are (more than) ______________________ twenty-five people here.
3. I paid (less than) _________________________ ten dollars for this meal.
4. The number six is _____________________ one and twelve.
5. 7 + 4 = 11 Seven _______________ four equals eleven.
6. 12 - 2 = 10 Two _______________ twelve equals ten.
7. $\begin{array}{r}6\\2\overline{)12}\end{array}$ Two _______________ twelve equals six.
8. One-tenth _______________ one hundred equals ten.

UNIT 5:

Weather

DURING	IN	ON
—weather events (a storm, flood, hurricane, tornado, earthquake)	—types of weather (good, bad, foul, stormy cloudy, humid, wet, dry, hot, cold, sticky)	—types of days, periods of the day (nice days, sunny mornings, humid nights, rainy weekends)
	in the rain **in the snow**	
We stayed at home during the storm.	***They swim in good weather.*** ***He walked home in the rain.*** ***The children played in the snow.***	***I sit on the balcony on sunny mornings.*** ***We play cards on rainy weekends.***

PRACTICE

5-1. Fill in the blanks with the correct prepositions:

1. I don't like to go out ________ bad weather.
2. The children love to play ________ the snow.
3. They have to stay inside ________ the storm.
4. We often go to the beach ________ sunny days.
5. She loves to walk ________ the rain.
6. She gets depressed ________ rainy days.

7. _________ the hurricane we stayed in the basement.

8. ________ cold days you have to wear a warm coat, a hat, and gloves.

9. ________ cold weather it is nice to sit by the fire.

10. What do you do __________ snowy evenings?

UNIT 6:

Source of Information

IN	ON	FROM A PERSON OR PEOPLE
—written material (book, magazine, article, newspaper)	—electronically (the radio, the Internet, the telephone, television social media, _____ (name of social medium or app)	—graphic material (photo, video, picture, movie, film)
I read it in a book. She found the article in a magazine. We saw you in a movie.	***I heard it on the radio. They saw him on television.***	

PRACTICE

6-1. Fill in each blank with the appropriate preposition:

1. I saw your picture _______ the newspaper.
2. He found the information _______ the Internet.
3. She heard the news _______ television last night.
4. The video went viral _____ social media.
5. I read that _______ a book.
6. He got those dates __________ his professor.
7. We watched that show ___________ television.
8. The article was _______ a magazine.

9. There was a good program _______ the radio yesterday.

10. Did you talk to her _______ the telephone?

UNIT 7:

Affiliation

IN	OF	ON
—part of a group (association, bureau, category, choir, chorus, clan, club, division, family, fraternity, group, office, organization, society, sorority, union, political party)	—related to origin of place, time, culture, generation, race, religion, sex	—part of an exclusive group (board, committee, jury, panel, team, council, crew, faculty, honor roll, list, payroll, squad, staff)
The children in that family are all good students.	***The people of that city are very friendly.***	***The women on that committee are snobs.***
	—a special member of a group ***She is the president of the college.***	

PRACTICE

7-1. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate prepositions:

1. She is _______ the female sex.
2. My sister is _______ the jury.
3. She is also _______ the women's chorus.
4. Her son is _______ the softball team.
5. His wife is _______ a different religion.

6. Is your brother ________ a fraternity at college?

7. She was the president _______ the senior class.

8. I think her cousin is _______ the school board.

9. She is _______ the garden club.

10. They are going to put you _______ the payroll next month.

UNIT 8:

Description

ABOUT	ABOVE	LIKE	OF	WITH
—partially describing	—better than	—similar to	—having an unseen characteristic	—having a physical characteristic
There is something cute about him.	***He is above deceit.***	***He is (just) like his father.***	***She is a woman of honor.***	***I'm looking for a woman with red hair.***
I don't see anything funny about that.	***She is above cheating.***	***He looks like his father.***	***They are people of low morals.***	***He is the man with the broken arm.***

PRACTICE

8-1. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate prepositions:

1. He is _______ his brother.
2. She may be nasty, but she is _______ cruelty.
3. We don't know anything __________ that.
4. His reputation is spotless; he is a man _______ decency.
5. There is something special _______ him.
6. She's a little crazy, but there is something _________ her that I like.
7. Have you seen a man _______ white hair and glasses? I can't find my father.
8. He is very polite; he is a man _______ good manners.
9. I don't know anybody ________ him.

10. My friend is the girl ________ curly red hair.

UNIT 9:

Wearing

(DRESSED) IN	WITH . . . ON	HAVE . . . ON
He was dressed in black.	***He is the man with the black suit on.***	***The man has a black suit on.***
She came in a red dress.	***She is the lady with the red dress on.***	***The lady has a red dress on.***
They are always in jeans.	***They are the students with jeans on.***	***The students have jeans on.***

PRACTICE

9-1. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate words:

1. The lady was dressed _______ red.
2. The lady had a red suit _______.
3. The lady _______ the red suit _______ is my sister.
4. The children who _______ blue jackets _______ are my nephews.
5. The children were _______ blue jackets.
6. The children had blue jackets _______.
7. I saw a man _______ black.
8. I saw a man _______ a black hat _______.
9. I saw a man who had _______ a black hat.
10. The students are always dressed _______ jeans.

UNIT 10:
Topic

Prepositions after Verbs:

ABOUT		AT	IN	OF	ON	OVER
advise	know	aim	assist	advise	agree	argue
agree	laugh	glare	bask	complain	concentrate	battle
argue	lie	grab	cooperate	dream	expound	cry
ask	pray	hit	drown	hear	focus	fight
bother	question	laugh	help	inform	harp	grieve
brag	read	look	interest	know	insist	puzzle
care	remind	rush	invest	learn	report	sigh
complain	say	shoot	participate	remind	speak	worry
contact	sing	snatch	persist	sing	write	
cry	speak	stare	steep	speak		
do	talk	swing	submerge	talk		
dream	teach			tell		
fight	tell			think		
forget	think					
grieve	wonder					
harass	worry					
hear	write					
inform	yell					
joke						

PRACTICE

10-1. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate prepositions:

1. She advised me __________ my schedule.

2. We argued __________ money.

3. They don't know anything __________ cars.

4. He helped us __________ getting a loan.

5. He taught me a lot __________ music.

6. They insisted __________ leaving early.

7. Are you going to invest __________ that business?

8. What are you looking __________?

9. Why did he persist __________ asking that question?

10. The girl is going to report __________ the environment.

11. One shouldn't cry __________ spilled milk.

12. We all tried to participate __________ the discussion.

13. Everybody laughed __________ him when he put on that silly hat.

14. I am dreaming __________ a vacation at the beach.

15. The children are fighting __________ the toys.

16. What subjects are you interested __________?

17. They are aiming __________ very high goals.

18. She reminds me __________ her sister.

19. He is totally focused __________ his job.

20. It's too bad they lied __________ it.

UNIT 11:
Recipient

FOR	ON	TO
—usually indicates benefit to recipient		—usually indicates transfer to recipient
after verbs: bake, build, buy, cook, create, dance, design, do, get, make, play, sing, want something, win, work, write	Expressions: **have pity/mercy** ***Please have pity on them. The boss had mercy on us and let us go home early.*** **pull a gun/knife on** ***The thief pulled a gun on the frightened workers.***	**after verbs:** award, bring, carry, dedicate, deliver, describe, devote, distribute, donate, explain, give, hand, introduce, lend, mention, pass, present, read, recommend, reveal, send, shout, show, sing, speak, submit, suggest, take, tell, write
I wrote this poem for you.		***I wrote this letter to you.***
after nouns:		**after nouns:**
advice, answer, cure, gift, help, idea, information, job, letter, present, message, news, nothing, plan, present, project, question, secret, something, surprise		answer, award, bill, dedication, gift, letter, memorial, monument, present, plaque, remark, scholarship, statement, toast
Here is an answer for him.		***They gave the answer to him.***
—indicates effect on recipient		—indicates effect on recipient
after adjectives: bad, beneficial, better,		beneficial, detrimental, harmful, helpful, useful,

crucial, good, harmful, healthy, helpful, important, necessary, unacceptable, unfavorable, unhealthy, unimportant, useful, worse

That environment is unhealthy for you.

unfavorable

His advice was very useful to her.

—indicates recipient's feelings

after adjectives: abhorrent, acceptable, annoying, boring, confusing, crucial, distasteful, disturbing, fascinating, gratifying, hurtful, important, meaningful, obnoxious, pleasing, precious, preferable, repulsive, satisfying, unacceptable, unimportant, vexing, worrisome

Those comments were hurtful to us.

PRACTICE

11-1. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate prepositions:

1. I hope they give the award __________ him.
2. She cooked a big meal __________ us.
3. The police had mercy __________ the young hooligans and sent them home.
4. The travel agency had a lot of information __________ her.
5. They sent a lot of information __________ her.
6. The information was useful __________ her.
7. This fresh fruit is good _______ you.
8. The news was fascinating __________ him.
9. Is the contract acceptable __________ you?

10. Practicing is very good __________ me.

11. They prepared a wonderful surprise __________ her.

12. Are electronic devices harmful __________children?

UNIT 12:
State

Nouns after Prepositions

AT	IN		ON	OUT OF	UNDER
attention	a hurry	disarray	a roll	breath	consideration
ease	a mess	disaster	approval	commission	construction
leisure	a mood	disgrace	board	control	discussion
peace	a rage	disorder	call	danger	investigation
play	a stew	doubt	course	focus	suspicion
rest	anguish	dread	display	gear	
risk	awe	fear	duty	luck	
war	bankruptcy	focus	edge	order	
work	captivity	gear	fire	practice	
	chaos	good health	guard		
	charge	hot water	high/low speed		
	check	jail	high/low volume		
	circulation	love	hold		
	comfort	luck	leave		
	commission	need	loan		
	condition	order	one’s best behavior		
	confinement	pain	order		
	conflict	power	parole		
	confusion	ruins	record		
	control	session	sale		
	danger	shape	schedule		
	debt	sickness	standby		

demand	tears	strike
despair	trouble	tap
		target
		track
		trial
		vacation

PRACTICE

12-1. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate prepositions:

1. The children were ____________________ breath when they finished the game.
2. The new houses are _______________ construction.
3. She is ______________ a big hurry.
4. The soldiers stood _______________ attention.
5. All of the workers are _______________ strike.
6. They sat there ___________________ comfort all afternoon.
7. I'm afraid she's _________________ a lot of trouble.
8. He isn't here; he's _________________ vacation.
9. These smart watches are ________________ sale this week.
10. The poor man was _______________ pain.
11. I hope your parents are ________________ good health.
12. We were talking on the phone and he put me ______________ hold.
13. That car seems to be ___________________ control.
14. Our boss is _______________ control of the situation.
15. Both boys are ____________________ investigation.

UNIT 13:
Separation

FROM	OF	OFF	OUT OF	WITH
after verbs: drive, keep, move, run, separate, stay, subtract, walk	**after verbs:** cure, die, relieve, rid	**after verbs:** break, chop, cut, pick, pull, saw, send, shave, take, tear, throw	**after verbs:** come, drive, get, go, grab, move, pour, pull, push, rip, sip, squeeze, take, tear	**after verbs:** be finished, be through, break up, cut ties, fall out, part, part company, sever relations, split up
after adjectives: divorced, separated	**after adjectives:** cured, relieved, rid			

PRACTICE

13-1. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate prepositions:

1. I'm glad you finally got rid __________ that old car.
2. He drove __________ the garage in a big hurry.
3. Are you finished __________ that project yet?
4. She walked __________ school to her apartment every day.
5. They relieved her __________ all her important duties.
6. They are going to send their children __________ to camp for the summer.
7. We can't move into the office until they move __________ it.
8. Before doing the laundry, I want to separate the dark clothes __________ the white ones.

9. Have you seen Sally? She has cut __________ all her hair!
10. It is wonderful; he has been cured __________ cancer.

UNIT 14:

Attitude

Adjectives before Prepositions

ABOUT	AT	BY	FOR	IN	OF	TO	WITH
angry	aghast	amazed	concerned	disappointed	afraid	addicted	annoyed
anxious	amazed	amused	eager	interested	ashamed	committed	bored
bashful	amused	annoyed	grateful*		disrespectful	dedicated	content
concerned	angry	bewildered	prepared		envious	devoted	delighted
confused	annoyed	bored	ready		fond	faithful*	disappointed
crazy	astonished	confused	sorry		in favor	grateful*	disgusted
excited	astounded	disgusted			jealous	opposed	fascinated
faithful*	indignant	embarrassed			mindful		frustrated
glad	shocked	fascinated			proud		happy
happy	speechless	frustrated			repentant		impressed
honest	surprised	irritated			respectful		irritated
mad	thrilled	shocked			scared		pleased
nervous	upset				sure		satisfied
objective					suspicious		thrilled
optimistic					terrified		unhappy
pessimistic					tired		upset
right					trusting		
sad					uncertain		
sick					unsure		
silly					wary		
sorry							
unhappy							
upset							
worried							

*grateful *to* a person/grateful *for* a thing
faithful *to* a person/faithful *about* doing something

PRACTICE

14-1. Fill in the blanks with the correct prepositions:

1. She is ashamed _____ her sloppy work.
2. Are you ready _____ the test?

3. We are grateful _____ you.
4. We are grateful _____ your help.
5. He is very annoyed _____ me.
6. Try to be objective _____ it.
7. They were shocked _____ the child’s behavior.
8. I am interested _____ studying there.
9. He seems to be suspicious _____ us.
10. She is a little unsure _____ herself.
11. I am so pleased _____ the new house.
12. Was he embarrassed _____ the gossip?
13. We are optimistic _____ the future.
14. The students were not prepared _____ the exam.
15. She seems to be unhappy _____ something.

UNIT 15:
Behavior

Adjectives before Prepositions

OF SOMEONE	ABOUT SOMETHING	WITH SOMETHING OR SOMEONE ELSE	TO SOMEONE ELSE	TOWARD SOMEONE ELSE	ON SOMEONE ELSE
bad	careless	awkward	charming	affectionate	easy
careless	charming	belligerent	considerate	charitable	hard
charming	crazy	careful	courteous	considerate	rough
crazy	cruel	careless	cruel	cool	soft
crude	good	clumsy	faithful	courteous	strict
cruel	honest	curt	friendly	friendly	tough
evil	kind	flexible	good	gracious	
good	mean	forthcoming	gracious	hospitable	
hateful	nasty	frank	hateful	inhospitable	
honest	nice	friendly	helpful	menacing	
ignorant	rude	generous	hospitable	spiteful	
irresponsible	selfish	honest	inhospitable	sympathetic	
kind	sweet	impatient	kind	thoughtful	
mean	thoughtful	open	mean	warm	
nasty	thoughtless	patient	nice		
nice	understanding	stiff	polite		
responsible	unkind	sympathetic	rude		
rude		truthful	sweet		
selfish			sympathetic		
sweet			truthful		
thoughtful			unkind		
thoughtless					
typical					
unconscionable					
understanding					

unkind

PRACTICE

15-1. Fill in the blanks with the correct prepositions:

1. She was impatient ________________ us.
2. He was rude ________________ our absence.
3. Try to be courteous _______________ everyone.
4. The teacher is too hard ______________ him.
5. Thank you for being so hospitable _______________ my mother.
6. They have been very sympathetic ___________________her.
7. The old man was generous _________________ his money.
8. Do you think he is being honest ______________ us?
9. She is faithful ___________ her husband.
10. The landlord was nasty ____________________ my late payment.

Verbs before Prepositions

AT	ON	TO	TOWARD	WITH
cheer	center	adapt	contribute	agree
grumble	concentrate	admit	donate	collaborate
guess	dote	agree	give	comply
hint	dwell	appeal	go	concur
hoot	err	consent	head	cooperate
laugh	harp	listen	help	empathize
rebel	pick	object	lean	get along
rejoice	prey	pay attention	push	harmonize
snort	put pressure	react	take steps	help
tremble	wait	relate	work	negotiate
	work	reply		sympathize
		respond		work
		revert		
		subscribe		

PRACTICE

15-2. Fill in the blanks with the correct prepositions:

1. He didn’t respond ____________ my letter.
2. You have to comply _________________ the agreement.
3. We are working ___________________ our goals.
4. Try not to dwell _______________ your problems.
5. I don’t object _________________ their coming.
6. They donated ________________ several charities.
7. She is putting a lot of pressure ______________ him.
8. I wish you wouldn’t laugh _____________ my mistakes.
9. They rejoiced __________________ the news.
10. The children cried _______________ delight.

Prepositions before Nouns

IN	WITH		IN/WITH	
assent	abandon	humility	anger	dread
cold blood	anger	indifference	apprehension	earnest
compliance	care	joy	approbation	fairness
confusion	compassion	kindness	approval	fear
consent	courage	love	compassion	friendship
defeat	delight	malice	confidence	gratitude
desolation	despair	optimism	contempt	grief
disgrace	discretion	pleasure	defiance	happiness
disobedience	disdain	pride	delight	kindness
dissent	distress	regard	despair	pain
fun	enthusiasm	sadness	disappointment	relief
person	fear	shame	disbelief	sadness
private	feeling	skill	disdain	shame
public	glee	sympathy	disgust	sorrow
reaction	grace	tenderness	dismay	sympathy
someone’s absence	gratitude	thanks	distress	trust
someone’s presence	happiness	understanding		
	hatred			

PRACTICE

15-3. Fill in the blanks with the correct prepositions:

1. He resigned ______________ disgrace.

2. She performed her duties ______________ grace.

3. She hung her head ______________ sorrow.

4. I told you that ______________ confidence.

5. You have to deliver it ________________ person.

6. The woman was clearly ______________ pain.

7. She does her work __________________ skill.

8. Please don’t talk so loud ______________ public.

9. The matter must be treated ______________ discretion.

10. She accepted the invitation ________________ pleasure.

PART THREE

Using Prepositions

How to Use Part Three

This part explores the ways prepositions can be used in a sentence.

1. In each unit, observe the sentence patterns.

2. Read the example sentences aloud.

3. Think of another example sentence that follows the same pattern, and write it down.

4. Do the exercises and check your answers.

5. If you have any mistakes, go back and read the section again.

6. Repeat the entire exercise as many times as you need to, until you have no mistakes. This will help you memorize the patterns so that they "sound right," and you will soon be using them without having to think about them. Be sure to master each unit before proceeding to the next, as these patterns are tricky.

UNIT 1:

Prepositional Phrases

A prepositional phrase is a **preposition plus an object**.
There are three possible patterns:
preposition + noun
preposition + pronoun
preposition + verb + –ing

Preposition + Noun

Singular Nouns

NORMAL PATTERNS

preposition	**+**	**noun determiner**	**+/–**	**(descriptive adjectives)**	**+**	**singular common noun**
with		a				pen
with		a		red		pen
with		a		new red		pen

SINGULAR NOUN DETERMINERS: a/an, the, one, this, that, any, each, every, another, either, neither, my, your, his, her, its, our, their, Mary's (or any other possessive noun)

EXCEPTION

preposition	**+**	**ø**	**+**	**singular common noun**
in				bed
to				school
at				school

Singular Proper Nouns

preposition	+	ø	+	proper noun
with				Mary
for				Mr. Jones

PRACTICE

1-1. Correct the mistakes in the following prepositional phrases. Write the correct phrases on a piece of paper.

1. with pen
2. for other girl
3. to Mary cousin
4. without book
5. from nice boy
6. between Mary and other girl
7. in the Mary's house
8. for the another apple
9. next to tall boy
10. near the Mr. Johnson's house

Plural Nouns

NORMAL PATTERNS

preposition	+/–	(noun determiner)	+/–	(descriptive adjective)	+	plural common noun
for						apples
for		the				apples
for				red		apples
for		the		red		apples

PLURAL NOUN DETERMINERS: the, two (or any higher number), these, those, any, no, either, neither, other, some, both, few, enough, plenty of, a lot of, lots of, many, all, my, your, his, her, its, our, their, Mary's (or any possessive noun)

A plural noun not preceded by a noun determiner indicates all of the group or in general.

PLURAL PROPER NOUNS

preposition	+	the	+	proper noun
for		the		Joneses
for		the		United States

PRACTICE

1-2. Correct the mistakes in the following prepositional phrases. Write the correct phrases on a piece of paper.

1. for three apple
2. without friend
3. in United States
4. from many country
5. to a lots of places
6. except this exercises
7. with another friends
8. at plenty of store
9. by other teacher
10. from the Smith

Noncount Nouns

NORMAL PATTERNS

preposition	+/–	(noun determiner)	+/–	(descriptive adjective)	+	noncount noun
for						water
for		the				water
for				hot		water
for		this		hot		water

NONCOUNT NOUN DETERMINERS: the, this, that, any, no, either, neither, some, little, enough, a lot of, lots of, plenty of, much, all, my, your, his, her, its, our, their, Mary's (or any possessive noun)

A noncount noun not preceded by a noun determiner indicates all of the group or in general.

PRACTICE

1-3. Correct the mistakes in the following prepositional phrases. Write the correct phrases on a piece of paper.

1. for these furnitures
2. for a fresh air
3. with a new jewelry
4. without many hot water
5. with a few machinery
6. of a sugar
7. by mails
8. with too many junk
9. for a meat
10. for three equipment

Preposition + Pronoun

An **object pronoun** may replace a noun object.

TO REPLACE	USE	
the speaker	**me**	*The letter is for **me**.*
the person addressed	**you**	*The letter is for **you**.*
one male person (John)	**him**	*The letter is for **him**.*
one female person (Mary)	**her**	*The letter is for **her**.*
one thing (a book)	**it**	*The letter is about **it**.*
the speaker + one or more others	**us**	*The letter is for **us**.*
the people addressed	**you**	*The letter is for **you**.*
more than one person (John and Mary)	**them**	*The letter is for **them**.*
more than one thing (books)	**them**	*The letter is about **them**.*

If there is more than one object after a preposition, use the **object pronouns**:

*The letter is for **us**.*	*The letter is for **you** and **me**.*
*The letter is for **us**.*	*The letter is for **him** and **me**.*
*The letter is for **us**.*	*The letter is for **her** and **me**.*
*The letter is for **us**.*	*The letter is for **them** and **me**.*
*The letter is for **you**.*	*The letter is for **you** and **him**.*
*The letter is for **you**.*	*The letter is for **you** and **her**.*
*The letter is for **you**.*	*The letter is for **you** and **them**.*

*The letter is for **them**.*	*The letter is for **him** and **her**.*
*The letter is for **them**.*	*The letter is for **her** and **him**.*
*The letter is for **them**.*	*The letter is for **him** and **them**.*
*The letter is for **them**.*	*The letter is for **her** and **them**.*

PRACTICE

1-4. Change the underlined nouns to pronouns. Write your answers on a piece of paper:

1. She paid for the apples.
2. He is excited about the car.
3. Do you study with your classmates?
4. The rug was made by my grandmother.
5. She made it for my sister and me.
6. We will give it to our children.
7. She is very fond of that boy.
8. They put the papers in the trashcan last night.
9. Please don't step on the floor until it is dry.
10. He hopes to get a call from Sam and Mary tomorrow.
11. It won't be the same without David and Amy and you.
12. There has been a lot of tension between Susan and me.
13. She lives near John and me.
14. They have been very kind toward Sarah and the boys.
15. She seems to be getting over her problems.

Preposition + Verb

A verb following a preposition should be in its **gerund** (basic verb + **ing**) form.

A pencil is used	for	**writing.**
We are excited	about	**going.**
They are happy	about	**coming.**
I am interested	in	**learning.**
She takes a nap	after	**eating.**
He is proud	of	**winning.**

Be careful with the word *to*. It may be a preposition or part of an infinitive.
To is a **preposition** after:

be accustomed to	She is accustomed to	**driving**	fast.
be used to	She is not used to	**driving**	in traffic.
look forward to	She is looking forward to	**driving**	home.
admit to	She admitted to	**driving**	my car.
opposed to	She is opposed to	**driving**	while drunk.
limited to	She is limited to	**driving**	during the day.

MORE EXAMPLES:

*I have to get accustomed **to getting** up early.*

*She isn't used **to working** all day.*

*The child admitted **to making** a mistake.*

*We are looking forward **to seeing** you soon.*

*They are opposed **to changing** the rules.*

*He is limited **to exercising** in the morning.*

To plus a basic verb forms an **infinitive**, and is not a preposition.
Use *to* + **basic verb** after the following verbs:
agree, appear, ask, be supposed, decide, expect, have, hope, intend, need, offer, plan, pretend, promise, refuse, seem, want, would like, used

EXAMPLES:

*He **agrees to help** with the arrangements.*

*She **appears to be** hurt.*

*They **asked to leave** early.*

*I **need to sleep**.*

*We **want to go** home.*

*Would you **like to play** tennis?*

Be careful with the expressions *be used to* and *used to*.
—be used to + gerund means "be accustomed to."

*I **am used to** working hard.*

*We **are** not **used to** working at night*.

—**used to** + basic verb means *did in the past*.

*I **used to** work hard when I was in college.*

*We **used to** work at night, but now we work during the day.*

PRACTICE

1-5. Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the verb:

1. She has to decide between _______________ (study) and _______________ (work).
2. That machine is great for _______________ (exercise) the leg muscles.
3. He saved a lot of money by _______________ (take) the bus to work.
4. Are you used to _______________ (drive) on the freeway?
5. We decided against _______________ (buy) that house.
6. They tried to stop her from _______________ (move) so far away.
7. I am tired of _______________ (cook) and _______________ (clean).
8. He is really good at _______________ (play) the guitar.
9. She is very close to _______________ (win) the race.
10. You had better eat something before _______________ (take) the medicine.

1-6. Choose <u>work</u> or <u>working</u> to complete the following:

1. She isn't used to _____________ on Sundays.
2. He used to _____________ every night.
3. I am opposed to _____________ tomorrow.
4. She is supposed to _____________ tomorrow.
5. He admits to _____________ too little.
6. He agrees to _____________ tomorrow.
7. We promise to _____________ next week.
8. He would like to _____________ every day.
9. They look forward to _____________ here.
10. She expects to _____________ here.
11. I am limited to _____________ here.
12. Have you decided to _____________ here?
13. They aren't used to _____________ every day.

UNIT 2:
Prepositions in Questions

A. Basic Sentences with *Be*

STATEMENT PATTERN

subject	+	verb	+	preposition	+	object
The letter		is		to		John.
The letter		is		about		money.
The letter		is		from		Springfield.
The letter		is		from		Virginia.

YES/NO QUESTION PATTERN

verb	+	subject	+	preposition	+	object?
Is		the letter		to		John?
Is		the letter		about		money?
Is		the letter		from		Springfield?
Is		the letter		from		Virginia?

INFORMATION QUESTION PATTERN

question word	+	verb	+	subject	+	preposition?
Who(m)*		is		the letter		to?
What		is		the letter		about?
Where		is		the letter		from?
What state		is		the letter		from?
Which state		is		the letter		from?

* *Whom* is used in writing and in formal speech. *Who* is used in conversation.

EXCEPTION:

The preposition *at* is not used with *where* or *what time*.

STATEMENTS:

The party is at my house.

The party is at ten o'clock.

QUESTIONS:

Where is the party?

What time is the party?

PRACTICE

2-1. Write a question that is answered by the underlined word in each statement.

1. Yes, the letter is from my mother.
2. No, I am not in Chicago.
3. We are from California.
4. They are from San Francisco.
5. The picture is of my sister.
6. The article is about dieting.
7. The class is at seven-thirty.
8. The concert is at Memorial Stadium.

B. Basic Sentences with Other Verbs

STATEMENT PATTERN

subject	+	verb	+	preposition	+	object
She		writes		to		John.
She		asks		about		money.
She		writes		from		Springfield.
She		writes		from		Virginia.

YES/NO QUESTION PATTERN

auxiliary verb	+	subject	+	verb	+	preposition	+	object?
Does		she		write		to		John?
Does		she		ask		about		money?
Does		she		write		from		Springfield?
Does		she		write		from		Virginia?

INFORMATION QUESTION PATTERN

question word +	auxiliary verb +	subject +	verb +	preposition?
Who(m)	does	she	write	to?
What	does	she	ask	about?
Where	does	she	write	from?
What state	does	she	write	from?
Which state	does	she	write	from?

EXCEPTION:

The prepositons *to* and *at* are not used with *where.*

STATEMENTS:

The letter is going to Chicago.

We are staying at the Forum Hotel.

QUESTIONS:

Where is the letter going?

Where are you staying?

PRACTICE

2-2. Write a question that is answered by the underlined word in each statement.

1. She works in the furniture department.
2. He calls from his office.
3. No, he doesn't text me.
4. He sends email to his boss.
5. Yes, he drives through Washington state.
6. He drives through Washington state.
7. They talk about the garden.
8. They discuss it with their neighbors.
9. He goes to Europe every summer.
10. She makes cookies for her children.
11. He works at the airport.

12. He works at four o’clock.

UNIT 3:
Prepositions in Noun Clauses

A question word often connects statements containing the verbs *know*, *understand*, *wonder*, *ask*, and *tell* with a noun clause (subject + verb combination).

introduction	+	**question word**	+	**noun clause**
I know				
I don't know				
Do you know		who		he is(?)
I understand				
I wonder				
Ask him				
Tell us				

Basic Patterns for Prepositions in Noun Clauses:

A. CLAUSES WITH *BE*

introduction +	**question word** +	***noun clause***		
		subject +	**verb**	+ **preposition**
I know	who(m)	the letter	is	to.
I know	what	the letter	is	about.
I know	where	the letter	is	from.
I know	what state	the letter	is	from.
I know	which state	the letter	is	from.

B. CLAUSES WITH OTHER VERBS

introduction +	**question word** +	***noun clause***		
		subject +	**verb (object)**	+ **preposition**

I know	who(m)	she	writes letters	to.
I know	what	she	asks	for.
I know	where	she	writes	from.
I know	what state	she	writes	from.

PRACTICE

3-1. Complete each answer:

1. Where is she from?

   I don’t know ___________________.

2. Who(m) is he talking to?

   I don’t know ___________________.

3. What does she write with?

   I wonder ___________________.

4. Who do they live with?

   I will ask them ___________________.

5. Who(m) is this letter for?

   We know ___________________.

6. What does he do that for?

   I don’t understand ___________________.

7. What company does she work for?

   She will tell me ___________________.

8. Which bus is she coming on?

   I will ask her ___________________.

9. Who(m) does she write letters to?

   I don’t know ___________________.

10. Which courses are you registered for?

    I don’t understand ___________________.

UNIT 4:

Prepositions in Adjective Clauses

An **adjective clause** can identify a noun. The clause comes right after the noun.

Basic Patterns for Prepositions in Adjective Clauses:

A. TO IDENTIFY A PERSON, AN ADJECTIVE CLAUSE CAN BEGIN WITH WHO(M), THAT, OR Ø:

person +	**introduction** +	*adjective clause*		
		subject +	**verb (object)** +	**preposition**
The man	who(m)	she	writes	to
The man	that	she	writes	to
The man		she	writes	to
The people	who(m)	we	live	with
The people	that	we	live	with
The people		we	live	with
The doctor	who(m)	I	ask	for
The doctor	that	I	ask	for
The doctor		I	ask	for

Make sure the adjective clause is right after the noun:

The man who(m) she writes to ***is my father.***
The people that we live with ***are nice.***
The doctor I always ask for ***isn't here.***

My father is ***the man who(m) she writes to.***
I really like ***the people that we live with.***
This is not ***the doctor I always ask for.***

B. TO IDENTIFY A THING, AN ADJECTIVE CLAUSE CAN BEGIN WITH THAT OR Ø.

thing +	**introduction** +	*adjective clause*

		subject +	verb + (object) +	preposition
the book	that	I	paid ten dollars	for
the book		I	paid	for
the house	that	they	are looking	at
the house		they	are looking	at
the cities	that	we	work	in
the cities		we	work	in

Be sure to put the adjective clause directly after the noun.

The book that I paid ten dollars for	***is great.***
The house they are looking at	***is expensive.***
The cities that we work in	***are far apart.***
I really like	***the book I paid ten dollars for.***
They might buy	***the house they are looking at.***
We love	***the cities we work in.***

PRACTICE

4-1. Combine each set of sentences into one sentence by forming an adjective clause. Write your answers on a piece of paper.

1. The man is my father. She writes letters to him.
2. The house is beautiful. My friends are looking at it.
3. Those are the children. My daughter plays with them.
4. The teacher isn't here. We talked to her yesterday.
5. The piano is fabulous. He paid a lot of money for it.
6. I am looking for the boy. I gave five dollars to him.
7. She likes the neighbor. She goes to the movies with him.
8. I lost the bag. I put my money in it.
9. I found the jacket. I took my keys out of it.
10. He can't remember the street. He parked on it.

PART FOUR

Phrasal Verbs

A **phrasal verb** is a verb followed by a preposition that narrows or changes the meaning of the verb. Learn the verb and the preposition together as one unit.

There are three types of phrasal verbs:

nonseparable

separable

intransitive

Each has its own set of word-order patterns.

How to Use Part Four

1. Begin with Unit 1 and study the patterns described.

2. Read each example aloud.

3. Make up a new example sentence, write it down, and say it aloud.

4. Do the exercises, write your answers in your notebook, and check them with the key.

5. Keep doing the exercises until you have no mistakes.

6. Be sure to master each unit before proceeding to the next one.

UNIT 1:
Nonseparable Combinations

EXAMPLE:

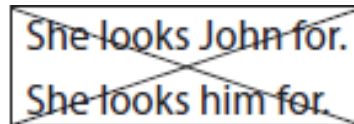
look for search

Word Order

The object noun or pronoun immediately follows the preposition.

STATEMENT PATTERN

subject	+	verb-preposition	+	noun or pronoun
She		is looking for		John.
She		is looking for		him.

Incorrect: ~~She looks John for.~~ ~~She looks him for.~~

Question Pattern 1 Use with *what*, *which*, *who(m),* and *whose*.

question word	+	auxiliary verb	+	subject	+	verb	+	preposition?
What		are		you		looking		for?
Which book		were		you		looking		for?
Who(m)		are		you		looking		for?
Whose book		did		you		look		for?

Question Pattern 2 Use with *why*, *when*, and *how*.

question word	+	auxiliary verb	+	subject	+	verb-preposition	+	noun or pronoun
Why		are		you		looking for		John?
When		did		you		look for		him?
How long		have		you		been looking		him?

			for	
Where	have	you	looked for	him?

Incorrect: ~~Why are you looking John for?~~ ~~Why are you looking him for?~~

NOUN CLAUSES

Pattern 1 Use with *what, which, who(m),* and *whose.*

introduction +	**question**	**+**	***noun clause***		
	word	**+ (object)**	**subject +**	**verb**	**+ preposition**
I don't know	what	book	you	are looking	for.
I don't know	which	book	you	are looking	for.
I don't know	who(m)		you	are looking	for.
I don't know	whose	book	you	are looking	for.

Pattern 2 Use with *why, where, when,* and *how.*

introduction +	**question word**	**+ subject +**	**verb**	**+ preposition**	**+ object**
I don't know	why	you	are looking	for	the book.
I don't know	where	you	have looked	for	it.
I don't know	when	you	looked	for	it.
I don't know	how	you	can look	for	it.

ADJECTIVE CLAUSES

Pattern 1

subject +	***adjective clause***				
	who(m) that ø	**+ subject +**	**verb**	**+ preposition +**	**verb**
The man	who(m)	he	was looking	for	is my father.
The book	that	he	was looking	for	is on the table.

Pattern 2

subject +	verb +	object +	*adjective clause*			
			who(m) + that ø	**subject +**	**verb**	**+ preposition**
I	see	the man	who(m)	you	are looking	for.
We	found	the book	that	you	were looking	for.

EXAMPLES OF NONSEPARABLE COMBINATIONS:

act like — behave in the same way as
*She **acts like** her sister. She **acts like** her.*

ask for — request
*They **asked for** information. They **asked for** it.*

beg off — make an excuse not to attend or participate
*He **begged off** going to the party. He **begged off** going.*

break into — enter forcefully
*Someone **broke into** the building. Someone **broke into** it.*

call on — ask one member of a group
*The teacher **called on** Tom. She **called on** him.*

care about — have affection for
*I **care about** my friends. I **care about** them.*

care for — have affection for
*She **cares for** her roommates. She **cares for** them.*
like or desire something
*Do you **care for** more potatoes? (Do you want more?) No, I don't **care for** more. (No, I don't want any more.) No, I don't **care for** them. (No, I don't like them.)*

check into — register
*They **checked into** the hotel. They **checked into** it.*

investigate
*The police **checked into** the situation. They **checked into** it.*

come across find by accident
*I **came across** these photos when I was cleaning out the closet.*
*I **came across** them.*

come after pursue in a negative way
*He **came after** my brother with a knife!*
*He **came after** him with a knife.*

count on expect someone to support you
*She **counts on** her mother for everything. She **counts on** her.*

fall for fall in love with
*She **fell for** the new employee. She **fell for** him.*
be tricked
*Don't **fall for** that old line! Don't **fall for** it.*

get in enter a vehicle that you cannot walk around in.
***Get in** the car. **Get in** it.*

get off remove one's self from a vehicle that you can walk around in; a personal vehicle; an animal that you can ride; a higher position
***Get off** the bus/bicycle/horse/ladder. **Get off** it.*

get on enter a vehicle that you can walk around in; a personal vehicle; an animal that you can ride
*Now you can **get on** the bus. **Get on** it!*

get over recover from
*It took him a long time to **get over** the tragedy.*
*It took him a long time to **get over** it.*

get with cooperate
***Get with** the program! You have to **get with** it!*

go for really like

	*She really **goes for** tennis players. She really **goes for** them.*
go over	review *Can you **go over** the lesson with me? Can you **go over** it with me?*
go through	have a careful look at ***Go through** your papers and look for the document. Please **go through** them and look for it.* experience a special period of time *He's **going through** a crisis. He's **going through** it.*
go with	match; coordinate *This blouse doesn't **go with** my skirt.* *This blouse doesn't **go with** it.* accompany; date *Are you **going with** John? Are you **going with** him?*
hear from	have news of *We **heard from** Mary yesterday. We **heard from** her.*
hear of	know about *I've never **heard of** that movie. I've never **heard of** it.*
keep at	continue to pursue something ***Keep at** the job. **Keep at** it.*
keep off	stay away from ***Keep off** the grass. You're supposed to **keep off** it.*
look after	take care of *She'll **look after** their dog. She'll **look after** it.*
look at	put one's eyes on ***Look at** this ad! **Look at** it!*
look for	try to find *Will you help me **look for** my cat? Help me **look for** it!*
look into	investigate

*The police are **looking into** the case. They're **looking into** it.*

look through try to find among other things
*She **looked through** her papers, but couldn't find the photo.*
*She **looked through** them, but couldn't find it.*

pick at agitate with one's fingernails
*Don't **pick at** that scab! Stop picking at it!*

pick on abuse a member of a group
*The teacher **picks on** Amy. She picks on her.*

run across find by accident
*I **ran across** this chair at a flea market. I **ran across** it.*

run for be a candidate for office
*Is he **running for** treasurer? Is he **running for** it?*

run into meet someone by accident
*I **ran into** Jim at the mall. I **ran into** him.*

run over trample with a vehicle
*That car **ran over** a squirrel. That car **ran over** it.*

see through detect someone's true motives
*It's easy to **see through** Jane. It's easy to **see through** her.*

see to take responsibility for
*The committee will **see to** the party preparations.*
*The committee will **see to** them.*

show through be transparent
*His undershirt **shows through** his dress shirt.*
*His undershirt **shows through** it.*

stand by support
*A loyal person **stands by** his friends. He **stands by** them.*

stand for represent
*That party **stands for** big changes. That party **stands for***

them.
tolerate
The teacher won't ***stand for*** *cheating. He won't* ***stand for*** *it.*

take after be like
He sure ***takes after*** *his father! He sure* ***takes after*** *him!*

PRACTICE

1-1. Rewrite each sentence, changing the noun object to a pronoun:

1. We asked for *the information*.
2. She is going to call on *Mary and Carolyn* next week.
3. They just got on *the bus to Chicago.*
4. I came across *some old family pictures.*
5. The policeman is coming after *you and Jessica.*
6. She ran into *some old friends* at the mall.
7. I am going to stand by *my friend.*
8. He just went through *all his papers.*
9. We are looking for *Jason's wallet.*
10. That boy takes after *his father.*

1-2. Write a question for each of the sentences in the previous exercise.

Example:

1. What did you ask for?
2. Who(m) ________________________________?
3. Which bus ________________________________?
4. What ________________________________?
5. Who(m) ________________________________?
6. Who(m) ________________________________?
7. Who(m) ________________________________?
8. What ________________________________?
9. Whose ________________________________?

10. Who(m) ________________________________?

1-3. Use the phrasal verb and tense indicated to complete each sentence:

1. I don't know what you ________________________________.
(look for, present progressive)
2. He asked me what I ________________________________.
(go through, past progressive)
3. She didn't tell us which hotel she ________________________________.
(check into, past perfect)
4. I want to know who(m) he ________________________________.
(care about, present)
5. I wonder what office she ________________________________.
(run for, present progressive)

1-4. Complete each sentence using an adjective clause:

1. He was looking for a book.
This is the book ________________________________.
2. Somebody broke into a house on this street.
Is that the house ________________________________?
3. She hopes to hear from that company soon.
What is the name of the company ________________________________?
4. The teacher picks on that group of students.
That is the group of students ________________________________.
5. I have never heard of that place.
That is a place ________________________________.

UNIT 2:
Must-Be-Separated Combinations

Certain verb-preposition combinations **must** be separated.

EXAMPLES:

call back	return a telephone call
get off	remove

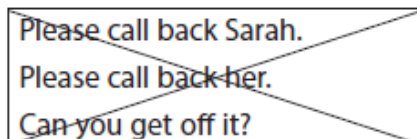
Word Order

A **noun** or **pronoun** object comes between the verb and the preposition.

*Please call **Sarah** back. Please call **her** back.*

*Can you get **the wallpaper** off? Can you get **it** off?*

Incorrect:

~~Please call back Sarah.~~
~~Please call back her.~~
~~Can you get off it?~~

EXAMPLES OF MUST-BE SEPARATED COMBINATIONS:

ask out — invite
*He **asked** Sally **out**. He **asked** her **out**.*

call back — return a call
***Call** Susan **back**. **Call** her **back**.*

do over — repeat a task
*He **did** his project **over**. He **did** it **over**.*

drop by — deliver
*He **dropped** this note **by**. He **dropped** it **by**.*

drop in — place something in a receptacle
*Just **drop** the letter **in**. Just **drop** it **in**.*

get off	remove *Can you **get** this wallpaper **off**? Can you **get** it **off**?*
have over	invite to one’s home *Let’s **have** the Smiths **over**. Let’s **have** them **over**.*
kick around	treat unfairly *He **kicked** the little kids **around**. He **kicked** them **around**.*
kick out	force to leave *They **kicked** Anne **out** of the group. They **kicked** her **out**.*
let down	disappoint *She **let** the whole team **down**. She **let** us **down**.*
name after	give the same name as *We **named** the baby **after** Paul. We **named** him **after** Paul.*
pass over	not promote on schedule *They **passed** Bill **over**. They **passed** him **over**.*
show around	give a tour *We’ll **show** your guests **around**. We’ll **show** them **around**.*
stand up	fail to appear for a date *She changed her mind, and **stood** the man **up**. She **stood** him **up**.*
start over	begin something again *It’s not good: **start** the scene **over**. **Start** it **over**.*
turn around	change the direction of ***Turn** the rug **around** and it will fit. **Turn** it **around**.*
turn down	refuse a proposal *The editor **turned** her book **down**. He **turned** it **down**.*
turn off	become unattractive to *She **turned** Sam **off** when she acted so silly. She **turned** him **off**.*

wear out exhaust someone
*That exercise **wore** Tim **out**. It **wore** him **out**.*

PRACTICE

2-1. Express each of the following using a separated phrasal verb:

1. Pedro called me and I returned his call.
2. Patricia repeated the test in order to get a better grade on it.
3. We invited André to our house.
4. He disappointed his teacher.
5. My father’s name is Connor. They named the baby Connor.
6. The teacher told Angela to leave the classroom immediately.
7. He said ‘no’ to Soo’s invitation.
8. Jessica and I were really tired after the long swim.
9. The guide gave Jason and his family a tour of the campus.
10. They didn’t promote Olivia.

2-2. Make a question for each “answer” in 2-1.

EXAMPLE: “She stood me up.” Did she stand you up?

UNIT 3:

Separable Combinations

EXAMPLES:

cross out	something
	delete something by marking it
look up	somebody
	try to find information about somebody

Word Order

A **noun** object may follow the preposition.

*He crossed out **the mistake**.*

*She looked up **her old friend**.*

A **noun** object may precede the preposition.

*He crossed **the mistake** out.*

*She looked **her old friend** up.*

A **pronoun** object may precede, but not follow, the preposition.

*He crossed **it** out.*

*She looked **him** up.*

Incorrect:

Question Pattern 1

question word	+	auxiliary verb	+ subject	+ verb	+ preposition	+	noun object?
Why		did	he	cross	out		the mistake?
Why		did	she	look	up		her friend?

Question Pattern 2

question word	+	auxiliary verb	+	subject	+	verb	+	object	+	preposition?
Why		did		he		cross		the mistake		out?
Why		did		he		cross		it		out?
Why		did		she		look		her old friend		up?
Why		did		she		look		him		up?

NOUN CLAUSES

Pattern 1 Use with *why*, *when*, *how*, and *where*

introduction	+	question word	+	***noun clause***						
				subject	+	verb	+	preposition	+	noun object
I don't know		why		he		crossed		out		the mistake.
I don't know		when		he		crossed		out		the mistake.
I don't know		how		she		looked		up		her friend.
I don't know		where		she		looked		up		her friend.

Incorrect: ~~I don't know why he crossed out it.~~
~~I don't know how he looked up her.~~

Pattern 2 Use with *why*, *when*, *how*, and *where*

introduction	+	question word	+	subject	+	verb	+	object	+	preposition
I don't know		why		he		crossed		the mistake		out.

I don't know	when	he	crossed	it	out.
I don't know	how	she	looked	her friend	up.
I don't know	where	she	looked	him	up.

Pattern 3 Use with *what*, *which*, *who(m)*, and *whose*

introduction +	question word	+ object	+ subject +	verb	+ preposition
I don't know	what		he	crossed	out.
I don't know	what	mistake	he	crossed	out.
I don't know	which	mistake	he	crossed	out.
I don't know	whom		she	looked	up.
I don't know	whose	name	she	looked	up.

ADJECTIVE CLAUSES

Pattern

subject +	verb +	object +	*adjective clause*			
			that who(m) ø	**+ subject +**	**verb**	**+ preposition**
This	is	the mistake	that	he	crossed	out.
This	is	the mistake		he	crossed	out.
He	is	the friend	whom	she	looked	up.
He	is	the friend		she	looked	up.

EXAMPLES OF SEPARABLE COMBINATIONS:

back up move a vehicle in reverse
Back *the car* ***up***. *You need to* ***back*** *the car* ***up***. ***Back*** *it* ***up***.

blow down destroy by wind
The wind ***blew down*** *the barn. The wind* ***blew*** *the barn* ***down***. *The wind*
blew *it* ***down***.

blow out extinguish with the force of one's breath
*The child **blew out** all the candles. The child **blew** all the candles **out**. She*
***blew** them all **out**.*

blow up cause to expand with the force of one's breath
*He **blew up** the balloons. He **blew** the balloons **up**. He **blew** them **up**.*

break down destroy
*They **broke** the door **down** to get in. They **broke down** the door.*
*They **broke** it **down**.*

break in use equipment for the first time
*We **broke in** the new lawnmower. We **broke** the lawnmower **in**.*
*We **broke** it **in**.*

break up end a meeting or party
*The police **broke up** the party. They **broke** the party **up**.*
*They **broke** it **up**.*

bring back return something
***Bring back** my book. **Bring** my book **back**. **Bring** it **back**.*

bring on invite a challenge
*The officer said to **bring on** the enemies. He said to **bring** the enemies **on**. He said to **bring** them **on**.*

bring up introduce a topic for discussion
*Don't **bring up** this idea at the meeting. Don't **bring** this idea **up**.*
*Please don't **bring** it **up**.*

call off cancel
*She **called off** the wedding. She **called** the wedding **off**. She decided to **call** it **off**.*

call up telephone

	Call up *your friends!* ***Call*** *your friends* ***up****!* ***Call*** *them* ***up****!*
carry out	remove something heavy ***Carry out*** *the sofa. Please* ***carry*** *the sofa* ***out****. Please* ***carry*** *it* ***out****.*
check off	remove from a list, indicating that it is no longer relevant *She* ***checked off*** *two tasks this morning. She* ***checked*** *two tasks* ***off****. She* ***checked*** *them* ***off****.*
check out	verify information *He* ***checked out*** *that information. He's* ***checking*** *that information* ***out****.* *He's* ***checking*** *it* ***out****.*
cheer up	put someone in better spirits *Let's go* ***cheer up*** *your mother. Let's go* ***cheer*** *your mother* ***up****.* *Let's go* ***cheer*** *her* ***up****.*
chew out	scold strongly *The coach* ***chewed out*** *the whole team. He* ***chewed*** *the whole team* ***out****.* *He really* ***chewed*** *them* ***out****.*
clean up	put back in order *We'll* ***clean up*** *the room after the party. We'll* ***clean*** *the room* ***up****.* *We'll* ***clean*** *it* ***up****.*
cross out	delete *She* ***crossed out*** *all my mistakes. She* ***crossed*** *all my mistakes* ***out****.* *She* ***crossed*** *(all of) them* ***out****.*
cut down	remove something tall with a saw or axe *They* ***cut down*** *the tree. They* ***cut*** *the tree* ***down****. They* ***cut*** *it* ***down****.*
cut out	remove with scissors or a knife

	I ***cut out*** *your article. I* ***cut*** *your article* ***out****. I* ***cut*** *it* ***out****.*
draw up	make a design on paper *The architect* ***drew up*** *the plans. She* ***drew*** *the plans* ***up****. She* ***drew*** *them* ***up****.*
drop off	deliver *She* ***dropped off*** *this package. She* ***dropped*** *this package* ***off****. She* ***dropped*** *it* ***off****.*
figure out	understand *I can't* ***figure out*** *this problem. I can't* ***figure*** *the problem* ***out****.* *I can't* ***figure*** *it* ***out****.*
fill in	write information on a blank space ***Fill in*** *the blanks.* ***Fill*** *the blanks* ***in****.* ***Fill*** *them* ***in****.*
fill out	fill in information on a form ***Fill out*** *the form.* ***Fill*** *the form* ***out****.* ***Fill*** *it* ***out****.*
fill up	add to capacity ***Fill up*** *the gas tank.* ***Fill*** *the gas tank* ***up****.* ***Fill*** *it* ***up****.*
get across	make someone understand *She* ***got across*** *the main idea. She* ***got*** *the main idea* ***across****. She* ***got*** *it* ***across****.*
get back	receive in return *You'll* ***get back*** *the money. You'll* ***get*** *the money* ***back****. You'll* ***get*** *it* ***back****.*
get out	remove *They* ***got out*** *the stain. They* ***got*** *the stain* ***out****. They* ***got*** *it* ***out****.*
give back	return something *We have to* ***give back*** *the tickets. We have to* ***give*** *the tickets* ***back****.* *We have to* ***give*** *them* ***back****.*

give out distribute

*She **gave out** pencils. She **gave** pencils **out**. She **gave** them **out**.*

hand in give to a teacher or boss

*We had to **hand in** our work. We had to **hand** our work **in**. We had to*
***hand** it **in**.*

hand out distribute to a group

*He's **handing out** the exams now. He's **handing** the exams **out** now.*
*He's **handing** them **out**.*

hand over give under force

*She **handed over** the gun. She **handed** the gun **over**.*
*She **handed** it **over**.*

hang up suspend from a hook or hanger

*Please **hang up** your clothes. Please **hang** your clothes **up**.*
*Please **hang** them **up**.*

have on be wearing

*He **has on** a blue shirt. He **has** a blue shirt **on**. He **has** it **on**.*

hold up keep high

*Sue **held up** her hand. Sue **held** her hand **up**. She **held** it **up**.*

rob

*Two men **held up** the bus. Two men **held** the bus **up**. They **held** us **up**.*

knock out hit until unconscious

*The boxer **knocked out** two others. He **knocked** two others **out**.*
*He **knocked** them **out**.*

leave out omit

*You **left out** David. You **left** David **out**. You **left** him **out**.*

look over review carefully

*He **looked over** her work. He **looked** her work **over**. He **looked** it **over**.*

look up look in a book for information
*I'll **look up** her address in the phone book. I'll **look** her address **up**.*
*I'll **look** it **up**.*

make up invent
*She **made up** the story. She **made** the story **up**. She **made** it **up**.*

mark down lower the price
*She **marked down** the dresses. She **marked** the dresses **down**.*
*She **marked** them **down**.*

pass in submit homework, as a group
*The students **passed in** their homework. The students **passed** their homework **in**. They **passed** it **in**.*

pass on spread news to others
*We **passed** the good news **on**. We **passed** it **on**.*

pass out distribute to a group
*The teacher **passed out** the test. The teacher **passed** the test **out**.*
*He **passed** it **out**.*

pass up not accept an opportunity
*You **passed up** the chance to study in Europe. You **passed** the chance **up**.*
*You **passed** it **up**.*

pay back return a loan
*You can **pay back** the money in ten years. You can **pay** the money **back** in ten years. You can **pay** it **back** in ten years.*

pick out choose
*She **picked out** a red dress. She **picked** a red dress **out**. She*

picked *it* ***out***.

pick up — collect
Pick up *the box.* ***Pick*** *the box* ***up***. ***Pick*** *it* ***up***.

put back — return something to its place
She ***put back*** *the candy. She* ***put*** *the candy* ***back***. *She* ***put*** *it* ***back***.

put down — stop holding
Put down *the boxes.* ***Put*** *the boxes* ***down*** *over here.* ***Put*** *them* ***down*** *here.*

put off — postpone
She ***put off*** *the party. She* ***put*** *the party* ***off***. *She* ***put*** *it* ***off***.

put on — begin wearing
He ***put on*** *a sweater. He* ***put*** *a sweater* ***on***. *He* ***put*** *it* ***on***.

round off — estimate the closest whole number
He ***rounded off*** *$39.95 to $40. He* ***rounded*** *$39.95* ***off*** *to $40.*
*He r****ounded*** *it* ***off*** *to $40.*

set up — arrange
I ***set up*** *the appointment. I* ***set*** *the appointment* ***up***. *I* ***set*** *it* ***up***.

show up — perform better than someone else
They were so good, they ***showed up*** *the other teams. They* ***showed*** *the other teams* ***up***. *They* ***showed*** *us* ***up***.

take back — repossess
Did he ***take back*** *the ring? Did he* ***take*** *the ring* ***back***? *He* ***took*** *it* ***back***.
return to a store
She ***took back*** *the shoes. She* ***took*** *the shoes* ***back***. *She* ***took*** *them* ***back***.

take down — disassemble

	*They **took down** the stage. They **took** the stage **down**.* *They **took** it **down**.* remove from a higher place *I **took down** the curtain. I **took** the curtain **down**. I **took** it **down**.*
take off	remove clothing *They **took off** their shoes. They **took** their shoes **off**.* *They **took** them **off**.*
take on	hire *They **took on** two new teachers. They **took** two teachers **on**. They **took*** *them **on**.*
take out	remove *He **took out** the rugs. He **took** the rugs **out**. He **took** them **out**.*
take up	shorten a garment *I **took up** the hem. I **took** the hem **up**. I **took** it **up**.*
tear down	demolish *They **tore down** our building. They **tore** our building **down**.* *They **tore** it **down**.*
tear off	remove paper or cloth quickly *He **tore off** the wrapper. He **tore** the wrapper **off**. He **tore** it **off**.*
tear out	remove from a book/notebook/magazine/etc. *Please don't **tear out** the pages. Please don't **tear** the pages **out**.* *Please don't **tear** them **out**.*
tear up	destroy by tearing *She **tore up** the letter. She **tore** the letter **up**. She **tore** it **up**.*
think over	consider an option *We'll **think over** your suggestion. We'll **think** your*

*suggestion **over**. We'll **think** it **over**.*

throw out put in the trash
*I **threw out** your old sneakers. I **threw** your sneakers **out**. I **threw** them **out**.*

try on test for fit
***Try on** these shoes. **Try** these shoes **on**. **Try** them **on**.*

try out test a piece of equipment
***Try out** my laptop to see if you like it. **Try** my laptop **out**. **Try** it **out**.*

turn in submit work
*We have to **turn in** the essay by tomorrow. We have to **turn** the essay **in** by tomorrow. We have to **turn** it **in**.*

turn off stop from operating
***Turn off** the lights. **Turn** the lights **off**. **Turn** them **off**.*

turn on begin operating
*He **turns on** the TV. He **turns** the TV **on**. He **turns** it **on**.*

turn over put the other side up
*She **turned over** the glasses. She **turned** the glasses **over**. She **turned** them **over**.*

turn up increase the volume
***Turn up** the music! **Turn** the music **up**! **Turn** it **up**!*

wake up stop from sleeping
*Don't **wake up** the baby. Don't **wake** the baby **up**. Don't **wake** her **up**.*

wash out remove with water
*I can **wash out** the spot. I can **wash** the spot **out**. I can **wash** it **out**.*

wear out use until it is no good
*They **wore out** the carpet. They **wore** the carpet **out**. They **wore** it **out**.*

work out solve a problem through effort
*We can **work out** our problems. We can **work** the problems **out**.*
*We'll **work** them **out**.*

wrap up cover with paper
*Shall I **wrap up** the package? Shall I **wrap** the package **up**?*
*Shall I **wrap** it **up**?*

write down note on paper
***Write down** my number. **Write** my number **down**. **Write** it **down**.*

write up make a report on
*She **wrote up** the wedding for the Star. She **wrote** the wedding **up**. She **wrote** it **up**.*

PRACTICE

3-1. Rewrite each sentence, changing the underlined nouns to pronouns:
Example: The wind blew down two trees. *The wind blew them down.*

1. The teacher came in and broke up <u>the party</u>.
2. Don't bring up <u>that subject</u>.
3. Are you going to call off <u>the wedding</u>?
4. We will clean up <u>the mess</u>.
5. I have to fill out <u>these forms</u>.
6. She is trying to get <u>the mud</u> off her shoes.
7. Did you give back <u>the money</u>?
8. We looked up <u>your sister</u> in Pittsburgh.
9. He always mixes up <u>the twins</u>.

3-2. Rewrite each sentence two ways, changing the pronouns to the nouns indicated:

1. They looked it over. (the new house)
   <u>They looked the new house over.</u>

They looked over the new house.

2. We are going to pass them in. (our papers)
3. He has to pay it back. (the money)
4. Did they kick her out? (Jennifer)
5. I hope she doesn’t pass it up. (this opportunity)

UNIT 4:

Nonseparable Combinations with an Additional Preposition

With these combinations, the object noun or pronoun always goes after the verb.

EXAMPLES:

break up with end a relationship
*He **broke up with** her last week.*

check out of teminate a hotel stay
*We **checked out of** the hotel. We **checked out** of it.*

get out of obtain release from an obligation; to leave a vehicle
*She **got out of** jury duty. She **got out of** it.*
*We **got out of** the car. We **got out of** it.*

be fed up with be out of patience with a person or situation
*The teacher kicked him out of class. She was **fed up with** his behavior.*

hang up on end a phone call abruptly, usually in anger
*I **hung up on** Sarah. She said something that made me furious, so I **hung up on** her.*

mix up with confuse
*Their careers are so similar that people often **mix** Alexa **up with** Michael. People **mix** her **up with** him.*

run out of use up the entire supply of
*She went to the store because she **ran out of** milk. She **ran out of** it.*

take out on punish someone for someone else's misdeed

*Eric had a tantrum in class, and the teacher **took** her frustration **out on** the whole class. She **took it out** on us.*

PRACTICE

4-1. Express each of the following with a nonseparable phrasal verb plus another preposition.

1. She wants to leave the car.
2. He ended the phone call with me abruptly.
3. We are using up all the milk.
4. The teacher calls John "Jim" and Jim "John."
5. He is mad at the boss, and is blaming me!
6. We need to leave the hotel officially.
7. I was released from lunch duty.
8. She is going to end her engagement to him.

UNIT 5:

Separable Combinations with an Additional Preposition

When another preposition is added to a separable combination, the object, noun, or pronoun always goes between the verb and the two prepositions.

Pattern **verb + non/pronoun + preposition + preposition + noun**

EXAMPLE:

to take out of to remove something from within

Statement:	*He took* ***the money*** *out of his back pocket.* *He took* ***it*** *out of his pocket.*
Question:	*What did he take* ***the money*** *out of?* *Which pocket did he take* ***it*** *out of?*
Noun Clause:	*I don't know which pocket he took* ***the money*** *out of.* *I don't know which pocket he took* ***it*** *out of.*
Adjective Clause:	*This is the pocket (that) he* ***took the money*** *out of.* *This is the pocket he took* ***it*** *out of.*

EXAMPLE:

to give back to to return something to somebody

Statement:	*We gave* ***the letter*** *back to her.* *We gave* ***it*** *back to her.*
Question:	*Who(m) did you give* ***the letter*** *back to?* *Who(m) did you give* ***it*** *back to?*
Noun Clause:	*I don't know who(m) we gave* ***the letter*** *back to.* *I don't know who(m) we gave* ***it*** *back to.*

Adjective Clause: *She is the girl who(m) we gave **it** back to.*
*She is the girl we gave **the letter** back to.*

EXAMPLES OF SEPARABLE COMBINATIONS WITH AN ADDITIONAL PREPOSITION:

check out of — borrow from a library
***Check** that book **out** of the library. **Check** it **out**.*

get back from — have something returned
*Did you **get** the book **back from** Kathy? Did you **get** it **back from** her?*

give back to — return to someone
*He **gave** the papers **back to** Charles. He **gave** them **back to** him.*

hand in to — give to a teacher or boss
***Hand** your work **in to** the teacher. **Hand** it **in to** the teacher.*

hand out to — give to each member of a group
*She **handed** the exams **out to** the students. She **handed** them **out to** the students.*

hand over to — give to an authority
*We had to **hand** the firecrackers **over to** the principal. We had to **hand** them **over to** the principal.*

hang up on — place on a hook or hanger
*Can I **hang** my coat **up on** this rack? Can I **hang** it **up on** this rack?*

mix up with — use for combining
*She **mixed** the ingredients **up with** a spoon. She **mixed** them **up with** a spoon.*

run out of — force to leave a place
*Her dad **ran** everybody **out of** the house. He **ran** us **out of** the house.*

take away from — remove forcibly from someone
*Her parents **took** the keys **away from** her. They **took** them*

***away from** her.*

take out of — remove from a container
*She's **taking** the crayons **out of** the box. She's **taking** them **out of** the box.*

tear out of — remove from a book or periodical
*You mustn't **tear** pages **out of** the book. You mustn't **tear** them **out**.*

wash out of — remove a spot with water
*Try to **wash** the stain **out of** your skirt. Try to **wash** it **out of** your skirt.*

write down on — note something on
***Write** the address **down on** this card. **Write** it **down on** this card.*

PRACTICE

5-1. Change each statement into a yes/no question. Change the underlined nouns to pronouns.

1. He brought the books up to the fourth floor.

   Did he bring them up to the fourth floor?
2. She is going to check some books out of the library.
3. He is trying to get the spot out of his shirt.
4. We got our clothes back from the dry cleaners.
5. He is going to hand his letter of resignation in to the manager tomorrow.
6. You should hang your coat up on the hanger.
7. She mixes the dough up with her fingers.
8. The police are going to run the ruffians out of town.
9. She takes the groceries out of the car herself.
10. I wrote your number down on a scrap of paper.

UNIT 6:
Intransitive Combinations

EXAMPLE:

act up misbehave

There is no object; the word following the verb is now an **adverb**.

Statement Pattern

subject	+	verb	+	adverb
The child		acted		up

Question Pattern

(question word)	+	auxiliary verb	+	subject	+	verb	+	adverb?
Why		did		the child		act		up?

Noun Clause Pattern

introduction	+	question word	+	subject	+	verb	+	adverb
I don't know		why		the child		acted		up.

Adjective Clause Pattern

subject	+	who that	+	verb	+	adverb	+	verb
The child		who		acted		up		is in the kitchen.

EXAMPLES OF INTRANSITIVE VERB + ADVERB COMBINATIONS:

act out misbehave
*The kids **act out** more at the end of the year.*

act up misbehave
*The kids always **act up** when their parents go out.*

add up make sense

*She's a good student, but she hates school. It doesn't **add up**.*

back down weaken one's stance
*He fought hard, but **backed down** when he saw that it was impossible to convince us.*

back off stop aggressive behavior
*She was yelling at the policeman, but **backed off** when he started to handcuff her.*

blow away disappear in the wind
*The newspaper came, but it **blew away** in the storm.*

blow out explode (a tire)
*When we were driving to Texas, the tire **blew out**.*

blow over lose importance
*They had a big argument, but it **blew over**, and they're friends again.*

blow up explode
*He didn't know it was a bomb, and it **blew up** in his hand.*
become angry
*When he heard what we did, the principal **blew up**.*

break down show sorrow
*The girl **broke down** at her grandmother's funeral.*

break out suddenly have spots or sores on one's body
*I heard you had the measles. When did you first **break out**?*

break up end a relationship
*They seemed so happy together; it's too bad they **broke up**.*

burn down be destroyed by fire (a building)
*We found out too late, and the barn **burned down**.*

burn up be destroyed by fire (an object)
*All of our photos and books **burned up**.*

butt in interrupt
*We were having a nice conversation until she **butted in**.*

calm down tranquilize one's self
*She was upset, but she **calmed down** quickly.*

carry on keep working
*Their leader got sick, but they **carried on** bravely.*

catch on understand
*After doing the homework exercises, he finally **caught on**.*

catch up attain the expected level
*She should go on the trip, but she'll have to **catch up** when she returns.*

cheer up improve one's mood
*I sure wish you would **cheer up**.*

chicken out become too afraid to participate
*She was supposed to do a parachute jump, but she **chickened out** at the last minute.*

chip in add to a collection of money for a benefit
*We're collecting for the Red Cross. Can you **chip in**?*

clam up refuse to talk
*When they started asking him questions, he **clammed up**.*

close down stop business
*I loved that shop; too bad it **closed down**.*

close up stop business for the day
*Please come back tomorrow; we're **closing up** now.*

come about happen
*He got into big trouble; now, how did that **come about**?*

come out declare one's homosexuality publicly
*She **came out** three years ago.*

come through behave as everyone hopes
*He didn't want to help, but in the end he **came through**.*

come to regain consciousness
*She fainted, but **came to** a few seconds later.*

crack down become stricter
*The students acted out so often that the principal decided to **crack down**.*

crop up appear unexpectedly (an obstacle)
*Some problems have **cropped up** recently.*

cut back reduce spending
*Because of the slow economy, most people have to **cut back**.*

drag on continue for too long
*The dull show **dragged on** until eleven o'clock.*

drop by visit unexpectedly
*My friends **dropped by**, and I was still in pajamas.*

drop in visit unexpectedly
*Come see us. Just **drop in** any time.*

drop off fall asleep
*He always **drops off** while watching TV.*

drop out stop going to school
*It's too bad he **dropped out**; now he'll have trouble getting a good job.*

eat out eat at a restaurant
*More people **eat out** than ever before.*

fall down collapse
*My mother **fell down** and broke her hip.*

fall over hit the ground
*The tall trees **fell over** during the storm.*

fall through fail to occur
*Our vacation plans **fell through** at the last minute.*

get along not fight
*Do you **get along** with your roommate?*

get around be active
*My dad just got back from Europe; he really **gets around**.*

get by barely manage to survive
*She has little money, but she **gets by**.*

get through finish
*When are you going to **get through**?*

get up leave bed
*What time do you **get up**?*

give in surrender
*When she saw the gun, she **gave in** and turned over the money.*

give up stopped trying
*After years of trying to save her marriage, she **gave up**.*

go by pass
*Time seems to **go by** faster when you're having fun.*

go on happen
*What's **going on** in the basement? I hear a lot of noise.*

go out stop functioning
*The lights **went out** last night during the storm.*

goof off waste time
*You're supposed to be working. Stop **goofing off**!*

grow up become an adult
*You are so silly. Sometimes I think you'll never **grow up**.*

hang around not leave

*We told them to go home, but they keep **hanging around**.*

hang out spend leisure time
*Where does he **hang out** in the evening?*

keep out not enter
*The building is condemned. You must **keep out**.*

live on not die
*She was a great influence, and her spirit will **live on**.*

look out take notice
***Look out** ! There's a car coming!*

luck out be fortunate
*There were no more tickets, but I **lucked out** and got one from a stranger.*

make out manage
*How did you **make out**? Did the interview go well?*

make up return to a relationship
*They broke up last week, but now have **made up**.*

nod off fall asleep
*She always **nods off** in class.*

pan out (not) end unsuccessfully
*Their new business didn't **pan out**, and they need jobs.*

pass away die
*His father **passed away** last year.*

pass out lose consciousness
*She was dancing, and all of a sudden **passed out**.*

pull over move a car off the road
*The policeman told him to **pull over**.*

run around party a lot
*He used to be responsible, but now he just **runs around**.*

show up	surprisingly appear *Even the teachers **showed up** at the rally.*
slip up	make a mistake *The error is my fault. I **slipped up**.*
stand by	not leave *The flight has been canceled. **Stand by** for more information.*
stand out	be emphasized *The bold printing makes the message **stand out**.*
stand up	get to one's feet *If you want to volunteer, please **stand up**.*
take off	begin to fly *What time does the plane **take off**?*
take over	assume control *What will we do if that political party **takes over**?*
throw up	vomit *The woman was so upset that she **threw up**.*
turn in	go to bed *He came home exhausted, and **turned in** early.*
turn out	finish *The party **turned out** well, thanks to your help.*
turn up	appear, uninvited *A lot of people we didn't know **turned up** at the party.*
wake up	stop sleeping ***Wake up** ! You're late for school!*
watch out	take notice; be careful *He'll get into trouble if he doesn't **watch out**.*
work out	end successfully

*I sure hope your new job **works out**.*
exercise
*She's in great shape. You can tell that she **works out**.*

PRACTICE

6-1. Rewrite each sentence, using an intransitve verb-adverb combination in place of the underlined verb.

1. The children <u>misbehaved.</u>
   The children acted up.
2. I hope the boss doesn't <u>lose his temper</u> because we are late.
3. I'm so glad you <u>came to visit</u>.
4. Please try to <u>be still and quiet</u>.
5. Do you think they will <u>understand the rules quickly</u>?
6. What time did you <u>fall asleep</u>?
7. It is important to <u>become mature</u>.
8. Those kids <u>act silly and do nothing</u> all day.
9. He <u>fainted in class</u>.
10. We passed the exam; we <u>were very fortunate</u>.

UNIT 7:

Intransitive Verb-Adverb Combinations Followed by a Preposition

EXAMPLE 1:

to get along with to live in harmony with

Statement:	*She **gets along with** her roommates.* *She **gets along with** them.*
Question:	*Who(m) does she **get along with**?*
Noun Clause:	*It doesn't matter who(m) she **gets along with**.*
Adjective Clause:	*Those are the roommates [who(m)] she **gets along with**.*

EXAMPLE 2:

to get through with to finish something that requires effort

Statement:	*They have **to get through** with their exams.* *They have **to get through** with them.*
Question:	*What do they have **to get through** with?*
Noun Clause:	*I don't care what they have **to get through** with.*
Adjective Clause:	*These are the exams (that) they have **to get through** with.*

EXAMPLES OF VERB-ADVERB-PREPOSITION COMBINATIONS:

add up to	total *The bill **adds up to** $366.*
be up for	be in the mood to ***Are** you **up for** a movie tonight?*
bone up on	research or study

*You should **bone up on** politics before the meeting.*

brush up on review
*She's **brushing up on** European history before her trip.*

catch up with attain the same level as
*I'm sure he'll **catch up with** the others soon.*

close in on entrap
*The police **closed in on** the gang and handcuffed them all.*

come down with become sick with
*The kids **came down with** colds.*

crack down on become stricter with
*They're **cracking down on** illegal immigration.*

cut back on use less of
*She had to **cut back on** sugar.*

drop in on visit unexpectedly
*My old high school friend **dropped in on** me last night.*

drop out of stop attending school
*Her boyfriend **dropped out of** college.*

face up to confront
*You're going to have to **face up to** reality and accept that your children have moved to their own places.*

fall in with become involved with
*He **fell in with** a rough crowd.*

feel up to be well enough to
*Do you **feel up to** a walk in the park?*

fill in for substitute for
*I have another commitment. Can you **fill in for** me?*

find out about learn information
*How did you **find out about** her new boyfriend?*

get ahead of — overtake
If you don't study, the others will ***get ahead of*** *you.*

get around to — finally do
When are you going to ***get around to*** *fixing the faucet?*

get away from — separate one's self from
You have to ***get away from*** *here.*

get away with — misbehave and not be found out
They cheated on the exam and ***got away with*** *it.*

get out of — be released from an obligation
How did you ***get out of*** *washing the dishes?*

get through with — finish a difficult experience
When does he ***get through with*** *chemotherapy?*

give up on — no longer have hope for
He let her down so many times that she finally ***gave up on*** *him.*

go in for — be interested in
Do you ***go in for*** *motorcycles?*

go out for — audition for a team
He's ***going out for*** *the football team; I hope he makes it.*

go out with — date
She's ***going out with*** *Paul on Saturday night.*

go through with — endure an event, even with second thoughts
Divorce is a big step. Are you really going to ***go through with*** *it?*

hang out with — spend leisure time with
Who are you ***hanging out with*** *these days?*

keep away from — not associate with
Her mother told her to ***keep away from*** *that crowd.*

keep up with maintain the same level as
*You run too fast; I can't **keep up with** you.*

look back on remember
*It's fun to **look back on** all the fun we had together.*

look down on feel superior to
*You must never, ever, **look down on** other people.*

look in on make sure that all is in order
*Thank you for **looking in on** my mother every evening.*

look up to admire and respect
*We will always **look up to** our mother and father.*

make up with reestablish a relationship
*They're not fighting anymore; he **made up with** her.*

put up with tolerate
*She refused to **put up with** his laziness, and kicked him out.*

run around with spend leisure time with questionable people
*I heard he was **running around with** a gang.*

run out of exhaust the supply of
*We **ran out of** gas in the middle of nowhere.*

stand in for substitute for
*She couldn't come, so her sister is **standing in for** her.*

stand up for support or witness
*All of his friends **stood up for** him at the trial.*

try out for audition for
*He is **trying out for** the part of the king in the school play.*

watch out for be wary of
***Watch out for** potholes in the road!*

PRACTICE

7-1. Rewrite each sentence, using a verb-adverb-preposition expression in place of the underlined words.

1. My sister is going to stop dating her boyfriend tonight.
   My sister is going to break up with her boyfriend tonight.
2. I don't understand how she tolerates her new roommate.
3. He is looking for another teacher to substitute for him tomorrow.
4. The doctor told her to drink less coffee.
5. If you have a cold, you should avoid other people as much as possible.
6. It is hard for the smaller children to maintain the pace of the big ones.
7. We have to go to the store; we have exhausted our supply of milk for the baby.
8. The children are exhausted from playing all day.
9. They will have to confront the facts.
10. We all respect and admire our boss.

UNIT 8:

Phrasal Verbs Used as Nouns

Many phrasal verbs are commonly used as nouns. There are three ways to write these nouns:
as two separate words

EXAMPLE:

rip off a rip off a robbery
*I had to pay fifteen dollars to park my car. What a **rip off**!*

with a hyphen between the two words

EXAMPLE:

stand-in a stand-in a substitute
*She worked as a **stand-in** when the manager was on vacation.*

as one word

EXAMPLE:

turnout a turnout the size of an audience
*We had a great **turnout** for our baseball game.*

Unfortunately, there is no good rule or guideline to help us know which of the three forms to use. Many organizations have their own style manual to specify the usage they prefer.

Use these combinations as singular or plural nouns; use noun-determiners and descriptive adjectives as usual.

EXAMPLES OF PHRASAL VERBS USED AS NOUNS:

blowout a tire that has burst
*We had a **blowout** on the highway.*

breakdown a collapse
*Rioters crowded the streets, and there was a general **breakdown** of order.*

break-in an illegal or forced entry into a room or building
*We had a **break-in** at the office last night; several computers were stolen.*

break-up a separation caused by disagreement
*The young girl was unhappy about the **break-up** with her boyfriend.*

close-up a photograph of someone's face
*That photographer is very good at **close-ups**.*

come-on an incentive
*The free T-shirts at the game were a **come-on** to get more people to buy tickets.*

cover up an attempt to hide the truth
*The **cover-up** of the crime made it difficult to investigate.*

getaway a vacation
*That travel agency advertises exotic **getaways**.*

giveaway something that can be obtained for free
*There were a lot of prizes and **giveaways** at the fair.*

hand-me-down clothing used first by an older child and later by a younger one

*As the youngest child in a big family, almost all her clothes were **hand-me-downs**.*

handout free food or supplies
*Many homeless people survive on **handouts**.*

hangout a place where friends often go for relaxation or entertainment
*The bar on the corner is their favorite **hangout**.*

hang-up a psychological problem
*Her insecurity is one of her **hang-ups**.*

kickback money received by a controlling agent in a business transaction
*We believe somebody got a **kickback** in that business deal.*

leftovers food saved for another meal
*We have **leftovers** for a week after a big holiday meal.*

letdown a return to normal life after a time of excitement
*It was a big **letdown** for her to go back to work after her long vacation.*

lookout a place for observing the activities of others
*The detective had a great **lookout** from the tenth floor of that building.*

makeup paint for the face
*Most women look better with a little **makeup**.*

markdown merchandise that has been reduced in price
*The **markdowns** are in the basement of the store.*

mix-up confusion caused by an error
*There were a lot of **mix-ups** during our tour; most of the information we received about prices, hours of operation, and transportation was incorrect.*

pullover a sweater that you put on by pulling it over your head
***Pullovers** are comfortable and attractive.*

pushover a gullible person
*Her husband is a **pushover**; he will buy anything from a slick salesman.*

rip-off a high price for something of lesser value
*He paid too much for that antique chair; it was a **rip-off.***

show-off a person who constantly demonstrates his talents
*I don't like to dance with him because he is a big **show-off**.*

stand-in a substitute
*The **stand-in** for the main actor did a great job.*

step up an improvement in status
*The new house is a **step up** for him.*

takeoff departure of an airplane
*The **takeoff** was smooth, but the landing was difficult.*

takeover the assumption of control, management, or responsibility of another group
*There have been a lot of **takeovers** of big companies this year.*

tryouts auditions
*If you want to be on the team, come to the **tryouts** tomorrow afternoon.*

turnaround a change in attitude
*When he met her he went from depressed to cheerful; it was a complete **turnaround**.*

turnout the number of people attending an event
*The **turnout** for the office picnic was great; almost everybody came.*

workout a session of exercise
*A daily **workout** can improve your disposition.*

write-up an article in a newspaper or a magazine
*There was a big **write-up** about our friend in last week's paper.*

PRACTICE

8-1. Write the appropriate nouns in the blanks.

1. Our tire burst on the highway. We had a ____________________.
2. My friend is going to a psychologist to try to get rid of her ____________________.
3. The beach is private and quiet; it is a perfect ____________________ for a busy couple.
4. The woman carefully applied lipstick, powder, and mascara; she was an expert at putting on ____________________.
5. She paid two thousand dollars for that old, broken-down car. What a ____________________!

6. That soccer player always gets the ball and dances around with it. He is a big ____________________.

7. If you want to audition for the school chorus, come to the auditorium for ____________________ on Thursday at four o'clock.

8. The kids always go there to relax after school. It's their favorite ____________________.

9. Walking fast for an hour every day is a good ____________________.

10. Be sure to read the review of the show in the newspaper. It was an excellent ____________________.

UNIT 9:
Phrasal Verbs Used as Adjectives

Verb-preposition combinations are used as adjectives in some common expressions.
When used as adjectives before nouns, these combinations are hyphenated.

carry-out/take-out food	food prepared and sold to be eaten somewhere else *She lives alone and thrives on **carry-out food**.*
check-out counter	the place where the cashier is located *Please take all your purchases to the **check-out counter**.*
drive-by shooting	a crime involving the indiscriminate use of a gun from a vehicle *The wounded people were victims of a **drive-by shooting**.*
drive-in restaurant/movie; drive-through bank/carwash	a business where people enjoy the services without leaving their cars ***Drive-in movies** were popular in the fifties, but not anymore.*
hand-me-down clothes	used clothes *In order to save money, the student wore **hand-me-down clothes**.*
left-over food	prepared food saved from a previous meal ***Left-over food** is never as good as it was when it was fresh.*
run-down neighborhood	a neglected area

	There are too many ***run-down neighborhoods*** *in the city.*
stand-up comic	an entertainer who stands at a microphone and tells jokes *He made quite a bit of money as a* ***stand-up comic****.*
sit-down dinner/lunch/meal	a meal where the food is served at the table, rather than buffet style. *They hada wonderful****sit-down dinner*** *at their wedding reception.*
wake-up call	a telephone call ordered by a hotel guest to help him wake up *Our planeisleavingearlyinthemorning, sowewillneeda****wake-upcall****.*
wind-up toy	a mechanical toy that works by turning a key *The children love to play with* ***wind-up toys****.*

PRACTICE

9-1. Fill in each blank with a verb-preposition combination used as an adjective:

1. You can pay for your groceries at the ____________________ counter.
2. I'm cooking dinner at home tonight; I'm really tired of ____________________ food.
3. Whenever I check into a hotel, I ask for a ____________________ call for the next morning.
4. The politicians promised to help clean up the ____________________ neighborhoods around the city.
5. It is very convenient to deposit your checks at a ____________________ bank.

PART FIVE

Prepositions as Nouns, Adjectives, and Verbs

In the following examples, a preposition has been added to the beginning of the original word, making it more specific.

UNIT 1:
Nouns

In the following examples, a preposition has been added to the beginning of the original word, making it more specific.

byline a line at the beginning of an article with the author's name
His article was published, and he was pleased to see his name on the ***byline****.*

bypass a route that goes around a city, rather than through it
Taking the ***bypass*** *saves a lot of time.*
a surgical operation that avoids the main organ
Her father had a heart ***bypass*** *last month.*

downgrade a change to a lower quality
His new position is a ***downgrade*** *in salary, but he is happier.*

downpour a heavy rain
The streets are flooded after that ***downpour*** *yesterday.*

downswing a reduction in business activity
There was a ***downswing*** *in the first quarter of the year.*

downtown the heart of a city
Let's go ***downtown*** *tonight and have fun.*

input the contribution of ideas
We really need your ***input*** *for this proposal.*

off chance an unlikely possibility
He called me on the ***off chance*** *that I would be available.*

offshoot a branch
That group is an ***offshoot*** *of a national organization.*

outbreak an eruption
*There has been an **outbreak** of the flu in this city.*

outlaw a criminal
*The cowboy films always have heroes and **outlaws**.*

outpost a place of business far away from city life
*His store is a little **outpost** in the middle of nowhere.*

outpouring an abundance
*There was an **outpouring** of sympathy for the widow.*

output production
*Our **output** for the month was huge; we made a lot of money.*

overkill failure caused by too much effort
*The salesman talked so much that the client lost interest; it was complete **overkill**.*

overpass a bridge that extends over a road
*An **overpass** is being built at that intersection; it will ease the traffic situation.*

throughway highway
*You should go on the **throughway**; it's much faster.*

underdog the team or person not expected to succeed
*It's exciting when the **underdog** wins in a tournament.*

underpass a road built underneath another road
*To get on the main highway, you need to get on the **underpass** first.*

underpinnings foundation
*If the **underpinnings** are strong, the building will be safe.*

update the latest information
*The television stations are giving us an **update** on the tragedy every five minutes.*

upheaval a disruption

*There is a big **upheaval** going on in our office; a lot of people are being transferred.*

upstart ambitious newcomer
The new assistant tried to change our office procedures during her first week.
*What an **upstart**!*

upsurge increase in activity
*There was an **upsurge** during the second quarter, thank goodness!*

upswing increase in activity
*There has been a steady **upswing** this year.*

Certain expressions use prepositions in noun form.

backup someone who can substitute if necessary
*I think I am well enough to do the job; if not, my colleague is here as a **backup**.*

the ins and outs all of the details
*After owning a restaurant for twenty years, he knows all **the ins and outs** of the business.*

the ups and downs the good things and the bad things
*We learn to cope with **the ups and downs** of life.*

PRACTICE

1-1. Fill in each blank with a preposition-noun combination:

1. That business lost money during the ________________________ in August.
2. The arrival of tourists in the spring means a big ________________________ in business activity.
3. At the meeting they asked for ________________________ from everybody in the department.
4. Our boss gives us an ________________________ on the company's activities at the end of every month.

5. You'd better get a flu shot in case there is an ________________________ of the flu next winter.

UNIT 2:
Adjectives

In the following examples, a preposition has been added to the beginning of the original word, making it more specific.

backup reserve
*There is a **backup** crew in case you need help.*

bygone past
*In **bygone** days, the pace of life was slower.*

downbeat unhappy
*He has been **downbeat** ever since his girlfriend left town.*

for-profit money-making
*That group looks like a charity, but it is really a **for-profit** operation.*

in-class activity done in the classroom, rather than as homework
*We have to write an **in-class** composition.*

incoming being received
*The **incoming** mail should go in that pile.*

off-color obscene
*I really hate his **off-color** remarks.*

offshore in the ocean or sea
*They are trying to regulate the **offshore** drilling of oil.*

off-the-cuff spontaneous
*Her **off-the-cuff** remarks prove her to be very well informed.*

ongoing currently in progress

Everyone is sick of the long ***ongoing*** *investigation.*

online pertaining to the Internet
Online *services get better every day.*

outgoing extroverted
He is one of the most ***outgoing*** *young people I have ever met.*

out-of-the-way far away, and not on the main road
He proposed to her at a romantic, ***out-of-the-way*** *restaurant.*

overbearing domineering
Life is stressful when you have an ***overbearing*** *boss.*

overdone ruined from cooking too long
The dinner wasn't good; the meat was raw and the vegetables were ***overdone****.*

overextended too busy
Her life is very stressful because of her ***overextended*** *schedule.*

overjoyed very happy
He was ***overjoyed*** *when he heard the news.*

overpaid receiving more money than one is worth
The organization has a few ***overpaid*** *employees.*

underdone not cooked long enough
The meat was ***underdone****, so we put it back in the oven.*

underpaid paid less than one is worth
The workers at that factory are ***underpaid****.*

upbeat in a good mood
Everybody is ***upbeat*** *because of the holidays.*

upmarket stylish and expensive
The new mall has only ***upmarket*** *shops; there are no discount stores there.*

In the following expressions, prepositions are used in the form of adjectives:

the downside — the negative aspect
*The **downside** of my new job is that I have to work on Saturdays.*

the in crowd/thing/place — what is currently popular
*In high school, she was always part of **the in crowd**.*
*Body piercing was **the in thing** in the early nineties.*
*That nightclub is **the in place** for the over-thirty crowd.*

the inside story — information known only by the people concerned
*The tabloid newspapers always claim to have **the inside story**, but it is usually only speculation.*

the upside — the positive aspect
***The upside** of the new job is that there will be a lot of international travel.*

PRACTICE

2-1. Fill in each blank with a preposition-adjective combination with the indicated meaning:

1. We were ________________________ (thrilled) at the news.
2. She got the information through her ________________________ (Internet) contacts.
3. Many people are ________________________ (given too much work) and ________________________ (given very low wages).
4. Her new boyfriend is friendly and ________________________ (extroverted).
5. During the interview they explained the ________________________ (positive) and the ________________________ (negative) of working there.

UNIT 3:
Verbs

In the following examples, a preposition has been added to the beginning of a verb, giving it more specific meaning.

bypass to go around a city to avoid the downtown traffic
If you are in a hurry, you can ***bypass*** *Philadelphia by taking the alternate route.*

downgrade to lower in quality or status
They ***downgraded*** *her job, so she is looking for another one.*

download to add software to a computer
She ***downloaded*** *a new program this morning.*

outdo to surpass
She is very ambitious; she wants to ***outdo*** *everybody.*

outlaw to make illegal
They have ***outlawed*** *smoking in many public places.*

outpace to go faster
The men ***outpaced*** *the boys right from the beginning of the race.*

overcome to conquer
She ***overcame*** *her shyness and made a lot of friends.*

overdo to work too hard
After the operation, the doctor told him not to ***overdo*** *it.*

overtake to reach and then surpass
We knew him when he was just learning to dance, but he ***overtook*** *us and is now a professional.*

overturn to change from a negative situation to a positive one
*There has been a big **overturn** in the school system.*

overwhelm to surprise in the extreme
*The teacher was **overwhelmed** by the party the students gave in her honor.*

undercut to succeed by offering a lower price than one's competitors
*Discount stores usually **undercut** the department stores.*

update announce the latest news
*Have they **updated** the hurricane warning?*

upgrade to raise in quality or status
*She is earning more money because they **upgraded** her job.*

withdraw to stop participating
*It is a shame you have to **withdraw** from the class.*

withhold keep money that will be owed to you at a later date
*The government **withholds** part of your salary for income tax.*

In the following expressions, prepositions are used in the form of verbs.

to "down" something to drink something very fast
*After the race, he **downed** four glasses of water.*

to "up" something to increase something
*I wish I had bought that coat last year; they have **upped** the price.*
*The gym workout is getting easier; it's time to **up** the weights on the machines.*

PRACTICE

3-1. Fill in each blank with an appropriate preposition-verb combination:

1. In an effort to save money, they are going to ________________________ (decrease the status of) a lot of jobs.
2. I hope they can ________________________ (conquer) all of their difficulties.

3. That team didn't have enough players and they had to _______________________ (cancel participation) from the tournament.
4. He bought her a huge diamond ring, hoping to _______________________ (surprise and impress) her.
5. Do you think they will ever _______________________ (prohibit) guns in this country?

Appendices

Appendix 1: Answer Key

Part One

1-1 1. story 2. complaint 3. jokes 4. learn 5. told 6. unkind 7. excited 8. twenty dollars 9. finished 10. scattered

1-2 1. We are not about to go there. 2. She did an about-face.

1-3 1. The president's announcement brought about riots.
2. Is your great-grandmother able to get about by herself?

2-1 1. sofa 2. hang 3. principal 4. cruelty 5. article

2-2 1. The policeman went above and beyond the call of duty.
2. Even the president is not above the law.

3-1 1. swim 2. street 3. library 4. state

3-2 1. I came across this recipe in my mother's cookbook.
2. Her brother tried to get it across that she should be quiet.
3. I hope to get my message across to the audience.

4-1 1. read the instructions 2. your name 3. the school bus 4. studying 5. day

4-2 1. After all is said and done, we will be happy.
2. David didn't study for the test, but he got a good grade after all.

4-3 1. She takes after her dad.
2. The baby was named after her grandmother.
3. The babysitter looks after the children on Thursday afternoons.

5-1 1. suitcase 2. current 3. age 4. windows 5. dark hair 6. loan 7. the flu 8. gun control

5-2 1. It goes against the grain that teacher salaries are so low.
2. They became prosperous against all odds.
3. We're up against the state champions tomorrow night.

6-1 1. late 2. five classes

6-2 1. We asked if we could look around, and they said to go ahead.
2. They were just trying to get ahead.
3. His brother is trying to get ahead of him at tennis.

7-1 1. path 2. work
7-2 1. You thought we were angry, but we were just pretending all along.
7-3 1. It's important to get along with your classmates.

8-1 1. ourselves 2. winners 3. flowers

9-1 1. house 2. world 3. corner 4. scarf 5. moping 6. snooped 7. twenty-five dollars 8. five o'clock
9-2 1. Drive around back.
2. You have to turn around.
3. She's giving him the run around.
9-3 1. She really gets around.
2. Can you show me around the campus?
3. We are just hanging around.
4. His older brother kicks him around.

10-1 1. works 2. captain

11-1 1. school 2. 123 Oak Street 3. smiled 4. computer 5. war 6. latest 7. 75 miles per hour 8. 40 cents per pound 9. 3,000 feet 10. the news
11-2 1. They are at work.
2. Don't try to do everything at once.
3. We arrived at last.
4. We were happy at first.
5. He's at an advantage.
6. I keep her at arm's length.
7. I don't know what he's getting at.
8. He made a pass at me.
11-3 1. The child picked at the scab.

12-1 1. the store 2. came 3. call
12-2 1. The officer told her to step back/to move back.
2. I wanted to get back at her.
3. I'll get back to you when I have the information.
4. We need to cut back on movies.

13-1 1. a lot of people 2. four P.M. 3. the judge

14-1 1. Maria 2. Mrs. Martínez's and Miss Evans's classes 3. idea 4. problems
14-2 1. The bus is behind (schedule).
2. You are behind the times.

15-1 1. normal 2. mine
15-2 1. It was below the belt.

16-1 1. other people 2. pillow 3. cheating

17-1 1. sit 2. walk
17-2 1. Her comment was beside the point.
2. The teacher is beside herself.

18-1 1. All the girls 2. my brothers

19-1 1. fence 2. five 3. Monday and Friday 4. 33 and 40 5. New York and California 6. decide
19-2 1. Between you and me, I am not voting for that politician.

20-1 1. Chicago 2. homework
20-2 1. His behavior was beyond the pale/belief.

21-1 1. Monday

22-1 1. carpenter 2. 5 P.M. 3. gallon 4. 1,800 5. babysitting 6. rocks 7. 10 points
22-2 1. By all means, ask for help if you need it.
2. She is kind by nature.
3. By the way, don't forget the meeting next week.
4. Some people work by night and sleep by day.
5. She was (all) by herself.
6. I found this old photo by chance.
7. Do you by any chance know my father?
22-3 1. He stood by me when I needed help.

2. Could you run that story by me again?
3. She gets by.
4. Can we stop by/drop by this afternoon?
5. I go by your house on my way home from work.

23-1 1. work 2. each other 3. three hours

24-1 1. lack of experience 2. traffic

25-1 1. slide 2. tree 3. street
25-2 1. He hung the picture upside down.
25-3 1. The government is cracking down on homelessness.
2. I hope you don't come down with a cold.
3. Julia's mother will calm her down.
4. Please tell your dog to back down.
5. Please don't let your teacher down.
6. Are you going to turn the offer down?
7. Let's buy the computer when the price comes down.
8. She looks down her nose at the newcomers.
9. It's a good idea to write your passwords down.
10. Stop putting me down in front of your friends.

26-1 1. sleep 2. football game

27-1 1. Abe 2. Saturdays and Sundays

28-1 1. our house 2. honest

29-1 1. surprise 2. relaxation 3. tickets 4. winning 5. a warm coat 6. difficult 7. cat 8. grabs 9. leaving 10. bill 11. free 12. happy 13. drove 14. good 15. music 16. good 17. actress 18. higher wages
29-2 1. Please help me for once.
2. We didn't trust the travel guidebook, so we went there and saw for ourselves.
3. You're on time—for a change!
4. He decided to stop calling her once and for all.

5. It was very hot, so I decided to go for a swim.
6. We cannot change the situation now; we will stay quiet for the time being.

29-3 1. They stood up for the mayor.
2. He (really) cares for his mom.
3. She is trying out for the play next week.
4. The university will not stand for cheating.
5. No thank you. I don’t care for dessert.

30-1 1. hears 2. deleted 3. graduate 4. took off 5. 9 A.M. to 5 P.M. 6. $60,000 to $70,000 7. see 8. tired 9. crying 10. tell

31-1 1. car 2. notebook 3. chorus 4. 80s 5. 30 minutes 6. used paper 7. hand 8. portions 9. this 10. the rain. 11. black and white 12. rhythm 13. style 14. treat 15. grades

31-2 1. He will have to pass a driving test in addition to a written test.
2. A ban on smoking on campus is in the air.

31-3 1. Someone broke in last night.
2. We were having a private conversation, and he kept butting in.
3. You should check in at the hotel as soon as you arrive.
4. Before the plane lands, you have to fill in this form.
5. Count me in!

32-1 1. him 2. tennis court

33-1 1. experiences 2. class

34-1 1. house 2. surprise

35-1 1. to the mall 2. Australia

36-1 1. stomped 2. debt 3. trouble

36-2 1. I don’t want to get into trouble!

36-3 1. They talked me into going with them.
2. I wonder if I’ll run into anybody I know at the game.

37-1 1. mangoes 2. crazy 3. argue

38-1 1. near 2. her job

39-1 1. me and Taylor 2. favorite

40-1 1. the alphabet 2. private 3. mathematics 4. fourth 5. loaves 6. noise 7. a couple 8. the sky 9. rid 10. disgust

40-2 1. I didn't have the right of way.
2. We needed a change of scenery.

41-1 1. jumped 2. close to 3. school 4. lights

41-2 1. This is off the record, but I heard that the teacher is going to a different school.
2. His behavior is off the wall.
3. That bar is off limits to the kids.
4. My sister hit it off with my friends.
5. She is better off.

41-3 1. They called the wedding off.
2. I was nodding off during the meeting.
3. Hey—knock it off!
4. He was laid off.
5. His bad manners put everyone off.
6. What time does your plane take off?

42-1 1. standing 2. boardwalk 3. house 4. street 5. hands and knees 6. gloves 7. weekends 8. health care 9. basketball team 10. order

42-2 1. I'm trying to log on.
2. My computer is on the blink.
3. Elena is always on time.
4. She has a crush on the camp counselor.
5. On your mark, get set, go!

42-3 1. We have to get on the bus now.
2. It's hard for her to put her clothes on.
3. It's too bad you missed out on the party.
4. Don't let those bullies pick on your little sister.

5. You can log on here.

43-1 1. floor 2. cheated

44-1 1. ice cream 2. bed

45-1 1. sat

46-1 1. threw 2. style 3. ran 4. office 5. breath 6. Three 7. kindness
46-2 1. He asked me out. 2. They have checked out (of the hotel) 3. He dropped out (of school) when he was sixteen. 4. She passed out in class. 5. Please pick out four apples. 6. The firemen put out the fire. 7. I spilled coffee on the sofa and tried to get the spot out. 8. They work out together.

47-1 1. car

48-1 1. building 2. head 3. fence 4. dogs 5. state line 6. the speed limit 7. hotel room 8. money
48-2 1. She is head over heels in love with him.
2. That course is over my head.
48-3 1. Nobody was there when he fell over.
2. The police officer pulled me over.
3. He was passed over.
4. We are thinking your offer over.
5. Could you please look over these contracts?

49-1 1. your office 2. sixty-five

50-1 1. red light 2. window 3. course 4. illness 5. embassy
50-2 1. Do you think he will come through?
2. Our contract fell through.
3. She showed us through the museum.

51-1 1. day 2. city

52-1 1. home 2. school 3. flight 4. handed 5. best pianist 6. neighborhood 7. adapt 8. dust 9. obedient 10. a quarter 11. book club 12. gallon

52-2 1. He texts me from time to time.
2. Are you used to the climate here?

52-3 1. She came to a few minutes ago.
2. I am looking forward to your visit.

53-1 1. steps 2. contributes 3. hospitable 4. directed

54-1 1. midnight 2. April

55-1 1. gifts 2. seven 3. laws 4. impression 5. Canada

56-1 1. sad 2. thermal underwear

57-1 1. 12 P.M. 2. learn

58-1 1. hopped 2. hill 3. street 4. scrape 5. game 6. pieces

58-2 1. She kept walking up and down the room.
2. I hope you make up your mind soon.
3. It's up to you.
4. The workers are up in arms.
5. I can't go because I'm up to my ears in work.

58-3 1. My mom blew up when she found out.
2. Please don't bring that topic up at the meeting.
3. He will need to do extra work in order to catch up to the other children.
4. I hope this news will cheer you up.
5. Please hurry up!
6. Keep up the good work!
7. She can't keep up with you.
8. I hope she doesn't pass up this opportunity.
9. She wrote up her ideas.

59-1 1. dance 2. furnished 3. pride 4. toys 5. problems 6. a new company 7. harmony 8. broke up 9. shouting 10. these shoes

59-2 1. They were charged with starting the fire.
2. Down with the dictator/tyrant!
3. She gets along with her roommate.

59-3 1. I can't put up with his attitude.
2. I don't know how he gets away with his crimes.
3. Let's get on with it!

60-1 1. neighborhood 2. ten minutes 3. sight

61-1 1. her coat 2. training wheels 3. paying

61-2 1. She was without a doubt my best teacher.
2. We will finish tomorrow without fail.
3. That is without question.
4. The new boss began to work without ceremony.

Part Two

1-1.

1. in, in, on, at, in
2. since
3. for
4. at, on, by
5. on, of, for/in
6. on, at, around/at, until
7. at, in
8. after
9. through/during
10. during
11. At
12. up

2-1A.

1. on
2. in
3. near
4. far from
5. over
6. in back of/behind
7. at the top of
8. at the bottom of
9. next to
10. against
11. between
12. among

2-1B.

in, in, at, on, at, on, in, at, at, at, in, in, at, on, at, in, on, in

3-1.

1. across
2. up
3. over
4. away from
5. out of
6. down
7. back to
8. into
9. toward
10. through
11. along
12. past
13. around
14. onto
15. off

4-1.

1. about
2. over
3. under
4. between
5. plus
6. from
7. into
8. of

5-1.

1. in
2. in
3. during
4. on
5. in
6. on

7. During
8. On
9. In
10. on

6-1.

1. in
2. on
3. on
4. in
5. in
6. in
7. on
8. in
9. on
10. on

7-1.

1. of
2. on
3. in
4. on
5. of
6. in
7. of
8. on
9. in
10. on

8-1.

1. like
2. above
3. about
4. of

5. about
6. about
7. with
8. of
9. like
10. with

9-1.

1. in
2. on
3. with, on
4. have, on
5. in
6. on
7. in
8. with, on
9. on
10. in

10-1.

1. about
2. about/over
3. about
4. in
5. about
6. on
7. in
8. at
9. in
10. on
11. over
12. in
13. at
14. of/about
15. over

16. in
17. at
18. of
19. on
20. about

11-1.

1. to
2. for
3. on
4. for
5. to
6. to/for
7. for
8. to
9. to
10. for
11. for
12. to/for

12-1.

1. out of
2. under
3. in
4. at
5. on
6. in
7. in
8. on
9. on
10. in
11. in
12. on
13. out of
14. in

15. under

13-1.

1. of
2. out of/from
3. with
4. from
5. of
6. off
7. out of
8. from
9. off
10. of

14-1.

1. of
2. for
3. to
4. for
5. at/with
6. about
7. at
8. in
9. of
10. of
11. with
12. about
13. about
14. for
15. about

15-1.

1. with
2. about

3. to
4. on
5. to
6. to/with
7. with
8. with
9. to
10. about

15-2.

1. to
2. with
3. toward
4. on
5. to
6. to
7. on
8. at
9. about
10. with

15-3.

1. in
2. with
3. in
4. in
5. in
6. in
7. with
8. in
9. with
10. with

Part Three

1-1.

1. with a pen
2. for a girl/for this girl/for that girl/for another girl
3. to Mary’s cousin
4. without a book
5. from a nice boy
6. between Mary and another girl
7. in Mary’s house
8. for another apple
9. next to a/the tall boy
10. near Mr. Johnson’s house

1-2.

1. for three apples
2. without friends
3. in the United States
4. from many countries
5. to lots of places/to a lot of places
6. except these exercises
7. with other friends
8. at plenty of stores
9. by other teachers
10. from the Smiths

1-3.

1. for this furniture
2. for fresh air
3. with new jewelry
4. without much hot water
5. with a little machinery
6. of sugar

7. by mail
8. with too much junk
9. for meat
10. for equipment

1-4.

1. them
2. it
3. them
4. her
5. us
6. them
7. him
8. it
9. it
10. him and her/them
11. you
12. her and me/us
13. us
14. them
15. them

1-5.

1. studying, working
2. exercising
3. taking
4. driving
5. buying
6. moving
7. cooking, cleaning
8. playing
9. winning
10. taking

1.6.

1. working
2. work
3. working
4. work
5. working
6. work
7. work
8. work
9. working
10. work
11. working
12. work
13. working

2-1.

1. Is the letter from your mother?
2. Are you in Chicago?
3. Where are you from?/What state are you from?
4. What city are they from?
5. Who is the picture of?
6. What is the article about?
7. What time is the class?
8. Where is the concert?

2-2.

1. What/Which department does she work in?
2. Where does he call from?
3. Does he send email to text you?
4. Who(m) does he send email to?
5. Does he drive through Washington state?
6. What state does he drive through?
7. What do they talk about?
8. Who(m) do they discuss it with?
9. Where does he go every summer?
10. Who(m) does she make cookies for?

11. Where does he work?
12. What time does he work?

3-1.

1. where she is from.
2. who(m) he is talking to.
3. what she writes with.
4. who(m) they live with.
5. who(m) this letter is for.
6. what he does that for.
7. what company she works for.
8. which bus she is coming on.
9. who(m) she writes letters to.
10. which courses I am registered for.

4-1.

1. The man [who(m)] she writes letters to is my father.
2. The house (that) my friends are looking at is beautiful.
3. Those are the children [who(m)] my daughter plays with.
4. The teacher [who(m)] we talked to yesterday isn’t here.
5. The piano (that) he paid a lot of money for is fabulous.
6. I am looking for the boy [who(m)] I gave five dollars to.
7. She likes the neighbor [who(m)] she goes to the movies with.
8. I lost the bag (that) I put my money in.
9. I found the jacket (that) I took my keys out of.
10. He can’t remember the street (that) he parked on.

Part Four

1-1.

1. We asked for it.
2. She is going to call on them next week.
3. They just got on it.
4. I came across them.
5. The policeman is coming after you.
6. She ran into them at the mall.
7. I am going to stand by him/her.
8. He just went through them.
9. We are looking for it.
10. That boy takes after him.

1-2.

1. did you ask for?
2. is she going to call on?
3. did they just get on?
4. did you come across?
5. is the policeman coming after?
6. did she run into at the mall?
7. are you going to stand by?
8. did he just go through?
9. wallet are you looking for?
10. does that boy take after?

1-3.

1. are looking for.
2. was going through.
3. had checked into.
4. cares about.
5. is running for.

1-4.

1. he was looking for.
2. somebody broke into.
3. she hopes to hear from?
4. the teacher picks on.
5. I have never heard of.

2-1.

1. I called him/Pedro back.
2. Patricia did the test/it over.
3. We invited André/him over.
4. He let his teacher/her/him down.
5. They named the baby/him after my father.
6. The teacher kicked Angela/her out (of the classroom).
7. He turned Soo/her down.
8. The long swim wore Jessica and me/us out.
9. The guide showed Jason and his family/them around.
10. They passed Miriam/her over.

2-2.

1. Did you call Pedro/him back?
2. Did she do the test/it over?
3. Did you invite André/him over?
4. Did he let his teacher/her/him down?
5. Did they name the baby/him after your father?
6. Did the teacher kick Angela/her out?
7. Did he turn Soo/her down?
8. Did the long swim wear Jessica and you/you (all) out?
9. Did the guide show Jason and his family/them around?
10. Did they pass Miriam/her over?

3-1.

1. The teacher came in and broke it up.
2. Don’t bring it up.

3. Are you going to call it off?
4. We will clean it up.
5. I have to fill them out.
6. She is trying to get it off her shoes.
7. Did you give it back?
8. We looked her up in Pittsburgh.
9. He always mixes them up.

3-2.

1. They looked the new house over./They looked over the new house.
2. We are going to pass our papers in./We are going to pass in our papers.
3. He has to pay the money back./He has to pay back the money.
4. Did they kick Jennifer out?/Did they kick out Jennifer?
5. I hope she doesn't pass this opportunity up./I hope she doesn't pass up this opportunity.

4-1.

1. She wants to get out of the car.
2. He hung up on me.
3. We are running out of milk.
4. The teacher mixes John up with Jim.
5. He is taking it out on me!
6. We need to check out of the hotel.
7. I got out of lunch duty.
8. She is going to break up with him.

5-1.

1. Did he bring them up to the fourth floor?
2. Is she going to check them out of the library?
3. Is he trying to get it out of his shirt?
4. Did we get them back from the dry cleaners?
5. Is he going to hand it in to the manager tomorrow?
6. Should you hang it up?
7. Does she mix it up with her fingers?

8. Are the police going to run them out of town?
9. Does she take them out of the car herself?
10. Did I write it down on a scrap of paper?

6-1.

1. The children acted up.
2. I hope the boss doesn't blow up because we are late.
3. I'm so glad you dropped in.
4. Please try to calm down.
5. Do you think they will catch on?
6. What time did you drop off?
7. It is important to grow up.
8. Those kids hang around all day.
9. He passed out in class.
10. We passed the exam; we lucked out.

7-1.

1. My sister is going to break up with her boyfriend tonight.
2. I don't understand how she puts up with her new roommate.
3. He is looking for another teacher to fill in for him tomorrow.
4. The doctor told her to cut back on coffee.
5. If you have a cold, you should keep away from/stay away from other people as much as possible.
6. It is hard for the smaller children to keep up with the big ones.
7. We have to go to the store; we have run out of milk for the baby.
8. The children are worn out from playing all day.
9. They will have to face up to the facts.
10. We all look up to our boss.

8-1.

1. blowout
2. hang-ups
3. getaway
4. makeup

5. rip-off
6. show-off
7. tryouts
8. hangout
9. workout
10. write-up

9-1.

1. check-out
2. carry-out/take-out
3. wake-up
4. run-down
5. drive-through

Part Five

1-1.

1. downswing
2. upsurge
3. input
4. update
5. outbreak

2-1.

1. overjoyed
2. online
3. overworked, underpaid
4. outgoing
5. up, down

3-1.

1. downgrade
2. overcome
3. withdraw
4. overwhelm
5. outlaw

Appendix 2: Index of Phrases

in an	association		85
on the	assumption	of	131
	assurance	about	11
be	astonished	at	37
to one's	astonishment		165–166
be	astounded	at	37
to	attach	to	167
to	attach something	with	193
be	attached	to	169
an	attack	on	133–134
at	attention		37
pay	attention	to	166–167
be	attentive	to	167
in an	attic		84
after one's	attitude		20
one's	attitude	toward	174
something/nothing	attractive	about	13
be	attributable	to	169
to	audition	for	70
on the	authority	of	131
be	available	for	71
be	available	to	167
above	average		16
on	average		129
under	average		177
an	aversion	to	166–167
an	award	to	165
to	award	to	165

to	carry something	out	143
to	carry something	over	152
to	carry something	through	161
to	carry something	through	158
to	carry something	up	182
to	carve something	out of	144–145
in	case	of	94–95
in any	case		94–95
in that	case		94–95
in one’s	case		94–95
the	case	to	169
in	cash		90
at the	cash register		37
on	cassette		130
to	catch	on (to)	138
to	catch	up on	184–188
to	catch	up (with)	184–188
in a	category		85
the	category	of	112
be	caught	with	191
be	caused	by	56
on the	ceiling		126
to	celebrate	among	29
to	celebrate	with	195
at a	celebration		35
in	celebration	of	91
of	celebration		116
to	center	on	137